Reading & Vocabulary Development

# Concepts TComments

THIRD EDITION



Patricia Ackert | Linda Lee

## Contents

To the Instructor v Acknowledgments ix



#### Unit 1 Art 1

Lesson 1 Navajo Sand Painting 2

Lesson 2 Ceramics 13

Lesson 3 Cave Paintings 24

Lesson 4 Graffiti 36

#### **Extension Activities**

Video Highlights: CNN Video, Ndebele Art 46

Activity Page: Crossword Puzzle 48

Dictionary Page: Choosing the Correct Definition 49



## Unit 2 Organizations 51

Lesson 1 The United Nations 52

Lesson 2 Amnesty International 63

Lesson 3 UNICEF 74

Lesson 4 The Olympic Movement 85

#### **Extension Activities**

Video Highlights: CNN Video, U.N. Children's Forum 96

Activity Page: Crossword Puzzle 98

Dictionary Page: Understanding Acronyms 99



#### Unit 3 Places 101

Lesson 1 Hawaii 102
Lesson 2 Deserts 112

Lesson 2 Deserts 112 Lesson 3 Antarctica 122

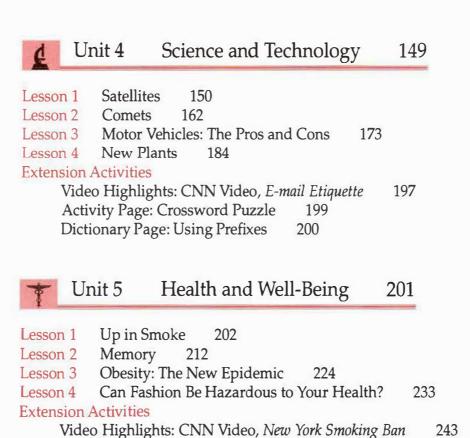
Lesson 4 National Parks 133

#### **Extension Activities**

Video Highlights: CNN Video, National Parks 144

Activity Page: Crossword Puzzle 146

Dictionary Page: Learning About Word Stress 147



Vocabulary 249 Skills Index 253

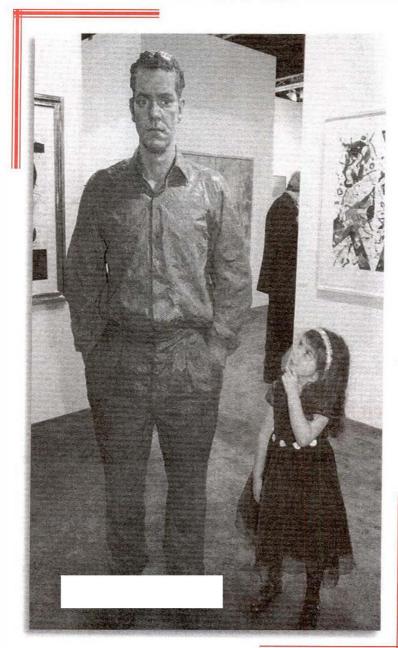
Activity Page: Crossword Puzzle

Dictionary Page: Understanding Labels: Slang

246

Every child is an artist. The problem is how to remain an artist once [you] grow up.

—Pablo Picasso



# **Navajo Sand Painting**

lesson

1



## **Before You Read**

- 1. What three adjectives would you use to describe the sand painting in the photograph?
- 2. How do you think a sand painting is made?
- 3. Sand paintings are usually destroyed soon after they are finished. Why do you think this is done?



#### **Context Clues**

It is not necessary to look up every new word in the dictionary. Often, the other words and ideas in the sentence or surrounding sentences (the context) can help you guess the meaning of the new word. When you are reading, try to use context to guess the meaning of new words. Try not to look up every new word in your dictionary.

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means. Do all of the Context Clues exercises in the book this way.

- 1. More than 500 years ago, the **ancestors** of the Navajo people moved south.
- 2. A small sand painting may have 2 or 3 people working on it, while a large painting may **require** 10 people.
- 3. At the end of the ceremony, it is **imperative** that the sand painting be destroyed. The Navajo believe that something terrible will happen if they don't do this.
- 4. One reason for this change is the **extensive** training necessary to perform the duties of a singer; it can take as long as 14 years to train someone.
- 5. A singer can train only one student at a time. This need for **one-on-one** training has limited the number of students who can be trained.



Telegram:@IELTSMatters

# **Navajo Sand Painting**



More than 500 years ago, the ancestors of the Navajo people left the cold northern region that is now part of western Canada and Alaska and migrated south to what is now the southwestern part of the United States.

5 The area in which the Navajo finally settled is mainly desert. It is a **harsh** environment that gets little rain. The animals and plants that live there have had to adapt in order to survive in the unforgiving climate and landscape.

When the Navajo arrived in the area, they too had to adapt to the harsh desert conditions in order to survive. They had to learn to make use of the natural resources in their environment to provide for their shelter, food, and other necessities. Over time, the Navajo became 15 famous for the things they were able to create from the natural resources at hand. One of the most famous Navajo creations is called sand painting.

Most people think of a painting as a work of art. For the Navajo, however, sand painting is not artwork. 20 Rather, sand painting is an important part of a religious ceremony. The making of a sand painting is part of a **healing** ceremony that is supposed to restore the health and well-being of a sick person.

The only people who are allowed to create sand 25 paintings are specially trained Navajo "singers" or "medicine men" and their assistants. A Navajo singer begins the process of creating a sand painting by collecting different rocks. The rocks are then crushed and ground into sand. Traditionally, a Navajo singer 30 and his assistants make the sand painting on the floor of a small Navajo house called a hogan. Working under the direction of the singer, the assistants take colored sand in their hands and drip it on the floor in a line. Using different colors, they slowly make a picture.

The size of Navajo sand paintings varies. A small sand painting is less than a meter wide, while a large mostly; primarily

bring back; return to normal good mental and physical condition



10

sand painting can be over 6 meters wide. The number of people assisting the singer also varies. A small sand painting may have 2 or 3 people working on it and take an hour to complete, while a large painting may **require** 10 men and women and take all day to finish.

During the healing ceremony, the sick person moves onto the completed sand painting. The sick person sits directly on the sand painting so that it can **serve** as a pathway for **evil** or illness to leave the person's body and for goodness or health to return to it. This explains why the Navajo word for sand painting means "place where the gods come and go." After the sick person has been treated, other visitors may go up to the painting and dab some of the sand on themselves so that the sand painting brings health and well-being into their lives too.

At the end of the healing ceremony, it is **imperative** that the sand painting be destroyed. The Navajo believe that something terrible will happen if they fail to destroy a sand painting **properly**. So, in the reverse of

the order in which it was made, the singer sweeps the painting away and returns the sand to the landscape.

Navajo singers make their sand paintings from memory, and they always make the same pictures in exactly the same way. There are between 600 and 1,000 different pictures for sand paintings. At one point in history, there was one singer for every 150 Navajos. Today, the ratio is much lower, with one singer for roughly every 2,200 people. One reason for this change is the extensive training required to perform the duties of a singer; it can take as long as 14 years to train someone. A second reason for the change in ratio is that a singer can train only one student at a time. This need for one-on-one training has limited the number of students who can be trained.

While a true sand painting is part of a Navajo ceremony and lasts for only a short time, sand painting as a permanent art form has also developed. The first permanent sand paintings appeared in the early 1900s. These early pieces of art were actually **tapestries** rather

correctly

relationship between two numbers

artworks made of cloth, often used as wall hangings



than paintings made with sand. The tapestries were woven by a respected Navajo singer named Hosteen Klah, who copied the pictures from sand paintings. However, to avoid causing something terrible to

happen by making a permanent picture, Klah never made the picture exactly the same as the **original**. He would not use a Navajo picture without changing it a little. Before long, tourists in the area saw Klah's weavings and asked to buy them. Klah finally agreed to sell one of his weavings if the buyer **promised** never to put it on the floor or walk on it.

In the 1930s, the Navajo began creating another type of permanent sand painting. They made these permanent paintings by slowly dripping colored sand onto glue-covered boards. Today, these sand paintings are considered to be works of art rather than part of a religious ceremony. They are made by artists rather than singers, and they appear in art shows and in art museums.

or There is still **controversy** over the selling of sand paintings. Some Navajos say that sand paintings are part of their religion and should not be sold. But others believe that the artists' changes to the pictures protect their religious power.

made from yarn into cloth; past participle of weave admired

# **a** Vocabulary

In this book, difficult words are repeated several times in the exercises. These words are also repeated and reviewed in other lessons. It is not necessary to list new English words with their meanings in your own language. You will learn them just by practicing.

In the Vocabulary exercises in this book, write the correct word in each blank. Use a word only once, and use capital letters if they are necessary.

|     | narsniy            | ratio                 | proper               |                     |
|-----|--------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
|     |                    | original<br>landscape | •                    |                     |
| 1.  |                    | way to d              |                      |                     |
|     | away.              | ,                     | 7 1                  | 0 1                 |
| 2.  | ,                  | vajo singer, a pers   | on needs             | training,           |
|     | or private instru  | action.               |                      |                     |
| 3.  | People have dif    | ferent likes and dis  | slikes. That's why   | there is always     |
|     |                    | about what n          | nakes good art.      |                     |
| 4.  | There are 10 me    | n and 5 women in      | a class. That's a _  | of                  |
|     | 2 to 1.            |                       |                      |                     |
| 5.  | The                | in some               | parts of the countr  | y is mountainous.   |
| 6.  | You should mak     | ke a copy of your b   | irth certificate and | then put the        |
|     |                    | in a safe plac        | e.                   |                     |
| 7.  | I apologize for s  | peaking to you        |                      | , but I was very    |
|     | angry.             |                       |                      |                     |
| 8.  | He can't do all t  | he research by him    | self. He really nee  | ds an               |
|     |                    |                       |                      |                     |
| 9.  | You can be certa   | in that our           | live                 | d very differently  |
|     | from the way w     | e live now.           |                      |                     |
| 10. | Parents are always | ys concerned abou     | ıt the               | of their            |
|     | children.          |                       |                      |                     |
| 11. | The Navajo belie   | eve that a sand pai   | nting can help to c  | lrive               |
|     |                    | out of a perso        | on.                  |                     |
| 12. | Navajo             | are ve                | ery expensive, but   | they look beautiful |
|     | hanging on a wa    | all.                  |                      |                     |



## Vocabulary

| Do   | this exercise the san | me way you did E                     | xercise a.           |                        |
|--|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
|  | adapt                 | heal                                 | restore              | require                |
|  |                       | •                                    | weave                | -                      |
|  | respect               | promises                             | mainly               | unforgiving            |
| 1.   | How long would        | ${ m l}$ it take you to ${ m ullet}$ |                      | . to a completely      |
|  | different environ     | ment?                                |                      |                        |
| 2.   | In some cultures      | , shaking hands                      | when you meet sor    | neone is a sign of     |
|  |                       | ×                                    |                      |                        |
| 3.   | You can't depend      | d on people who                      | break their          | ; you                  |
|  | can never be sure     | e they will do wl                    | hat they say they w  | ill do.                |
| 4.   | If you cut yourse     | elf, you should cl                   | ean the cut so that  | it can                 |
|  |                       | properly.                            |                      |                        |
| 5.   | To get a driver's     | license, it is                       | th                   | at you learn the rules |
|  | of the road.          |                                      |                      |                        |
| 6. Before he could write his report, he had to study the topic |                       |                                      |                      | topic                  |
|  |                       |                                      |                      |                        |
| 7.   | A loom is a frame     | e or a machine th                    | nat is used to       | cloth                  |
|  | and tapestries.       |                                      |                      |                        |
| 8.   | Their house is ma     | ade                                  | of wood, b           | out there is a little  |
|  | stonework on the      | e front.                             |                      |                        |
| 9.   | A piece of woven      | material can                         |                      | as a wall hanging or a |
|  | rug.                  |                                      |                      |                        |
| 10.  | He tried many di      | fferent things to                    |                      | his health.            |
| 11.  | Did your parents      |                                      | you to help o        | ut with the cooking    |
|  | and cleaning at h     | ome?                                 |                      |                        |
| 12.  | An                    | person r                             | never lets you forge | t the things you did   |
|  | wrong; an             | cl                                   | limate never lets yo | ou forget how harsh    |
|  | it is.                |                                      |                      |                        |
|  |                       |                                      |                      |                        |

## C

## Comprehension Check: True/False/Not Enough Information

Write **T** if the sentence is true, **F** if it is false, and **NI** if there is not enough information in the text to answer the question. Change the false sentences to make them true, or explain why they are false. Do all the True/False/Not Enough Information exercises in the lessons this way.

| 1. Sand paintings play a role in Navajo religious ceremonies.            |
|--|
| 2. Navajo sand paintings are usually created by a "singer," who          |
| paints a picture on a wall.  |
| 3. The ancestors of the Navajo made sand paintings.                      |
| 4. Most sand paintings are very small, measuring less than a meter wide. |
| 5. The purpose of a sand painting is to help someone who is ill          |
| become well.   |
| 6. During a healing ceremony, no one can touch the sand painting.        |
| 7. Many Navajos believe that something bad will happen if they           |
| don't destroy a sand painting correctly.                                 |
| 8. Navajo singers never paint pictures of the same things; every         |
| picture is very different.   |
| 9. It is quite difficult to become a Navajo singer.                      |
| 10. Today, many tourists participate in Navajo religious ceremonies.     |
|  |



## Comprehension Questions

Answer these questions in complete sentences.

- 1. Where did the Navajo's ancestors come from?
- 2. What happens during a Navajo healing ceremony?
- 3. How is a traditional sand painting made?
- 4. What happens to a sand painting after the healing ceremony?
- 5. Why are there so few Navajo singers today?
- 6. What role did Hosteen Klah play in the development of sand painting as an art form?
- 7. How are the sand paintings in museums different from the sand paintings used in healing ceremonies?





## Reading Strategy: Taking Notes in a Chart

It often helps to take notes as you read. Taking notes can help you to understand and remember what you read. One simple way to take notes is in a T-chart like the one below.

On the left side of the chart, you'll find the topic of each of the first six paragraphs. On the right side, write the main idea.

| Topic  | Main idea   |
|--|---|
| the migration of the ancestors of the Navajo | They moved to what is now the southwestern United States. |
| adapting to desert life                      |   |
| the purpose of a sand painting               |   |
| making a sand painting                       |   |
| the size of a sand painting                  |   |
| the healing ceremony                         |   |



## Vocabulary Expansion: Word Forms

Choose the right word form for each sentence below. Use a word from line 1 in sentence 1, and so on. You may have to change the verb form or make the noun plural.

|     | Verb      | Noun        | Adjective     | Adverb       |
|-----|-----------|-------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1.  | adapt     | adaptation  | adaptable     |              |
| 2.  | heal      | healer      | healing       |              |
| 3.  | restore   | restoration | restorative   |              |
| 4.  | require   | requirement | required      |              |
| 5.  | reverse   | reversal    |               |              |
| 6.  | extend    | extension   | extensive     | extensively  |
| 7.  |           | controversy | controversial |              |
| 8.  | weave     | weaving     | woven         |              |
| 9.  | respect   | respect     | respectful    | respectfully |
| 10. | originate | origin      | original      | originally   |

| 1.  | . He wasn't able to                                       | to the living conditions here, and        |
|-----|---|---|
|     | so he returned home.                                      |   |
| 2.  | . A medical doctor is a trained                           |   |
| 3.  | . When you are tired from working                         | g hard, a vacation can be                 |
|     |   |   |
| 4.  | . What are the  | for becoming a Navajo singer?             |
| 5.  | . First she drove the car forward, a                      | nd then she                               |
|     | direction and drove backward.                             |   |
| 6.  | . To get a PhD, you have to do                            | research.                                 |
| 7.  | . In the United States, the issue of                      | who should own a gun is very              |
|     |   |   |
| 8.  | . His parents taught him how to $\_$                      |   |
|     | . She was taught to speak                                 |   |
| 10. | I wanted to   | be a pilot, but later I decided to become |
|     | an artist.  |   |
| ~   |   |   |
| g   | Grammar Review: Articles                                  |   |
| Put | t an article ( <b>the, a,</b> or <b>an</b> ) in each blan | lk if one is needed                       |
|     |   |   |
|     |   | ncestors of Navajo people left            |
|     |   | s now part of western                     |
|     | Canada and Alaska.  |   |
|     | Most people think ofpaint                                 |   |
|     |   | part of religious ceremony.               |
|     | The size of Navajo sand pa                                | · ·                                       |
| -   |   | while large sand painting can be          |
|     | over 6 meters wide.                                       |   |
|     |   | nsidered to be works of art rather        |
|     |   | nony. They are made by artists            |
|     | •   | ar in art shows and in art                |
| n   | museums.  |   |
|     |   |   |



## Sentence Combining

Read the example and the model combinations below. Then rewrite sentences 1 and 2 following the models.

*Example*: The ancestors of the Navajo migrated south. They eventually settled in a desert area.

Models:

- a. The ancestors of the Navajo migrated south, and they eventually settled in a desert area.
- b. The ancestors of the Navajo migrated south and eventually settled in a desert area.
- c. The ancestors of the Navajo migrated south, eventually settling in a desert area.

|    | sand to the landscape.  |
|----|---|
|    | a   |
|    | b   |
|    | C   |
| 2. | Sick people sit on the sand paintings. They wait for the illness to leave their bodies. |
|    | a   |
|    | b   |
|    | C   |
|    |   |

1. The Navajo singer sweeps the sand painting away. Then he returns the



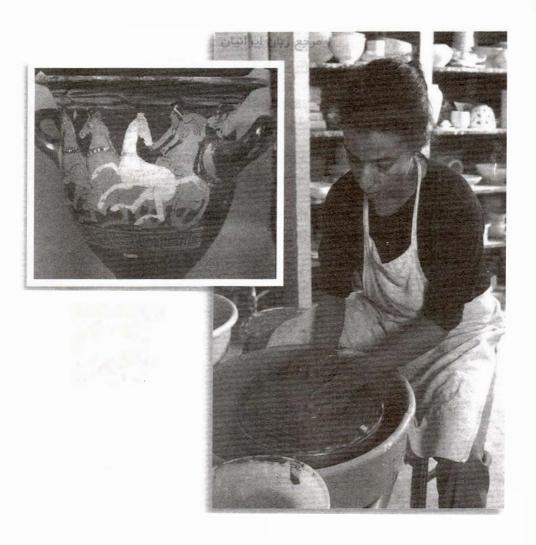
## Writing

Every culture has its own kinds of art. What is a traditional art form in your culture? Write a paragraph about a traditional art form from your culture. If you can, bring a picture to class to show an example of this kind of art. When you finish, exchange paragraphs with a partner.

## **Ceramics**

lesson

2



#### **Before You Read**

- 1. Do you own anything made of clay, such as a bowl or a plate? If so, what does it look like?
- 2. Why do people use clay to make dishes?
- 3. How is a clay dish made?



## **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. Much of what we now know about cultures of the past we learned by studying pieces of their clay dishes and clay figures. Very few things made from other **materials** have survived to tell us about the cultures that produced them.
- 2. Baking clay at very high temperatures actually changes the clay so that it become permanently hard and almost **indestructible**.
- 3. Potters in different parts of the world found interesting ways to **decorate** their work to make it more attractive.
- 4. After baking the clay pot, the potter must carefully remove it from the oven and let it cool slowly. If it cools too quickly, it could **crack** and break.
- 5. Over the years, clay objects have served many **purposes**. Obviously, one of the most common uses of pottery is for household dishes.





The most ancient <u>artifacts</u> in our <u>possession</u> today were made out of clay many thousands of years ago. In fact, much of what we now know about cultures of the past we learned by studying pieces of their clay dishes and clay figures. Very few things made from other materials have survived to tell us about the cultures that produced them.

that produced them.

Objects made from clay came to be called ceramics from the Greek word *keramos*, which means "potter's clay." Ceramics are divided into many different kinds based on the type of clay used and how the clay is **fired**. The most common types of ceramics are pottery, stoneware, and porcelain. To make pottery, for example, clay is fired at about 500°C. Clay fired at about 1200°C

becomes stoneware. When white clay is fired at an even higher temperature, it becomes porcelain. Baking the clay at such high temperatures actually changes the <a href="mailto:structure">structure</a> of the clay so that it becomes permanently hard and almost indestructible.

The art of making pottery developed in many places around the world. Some of the earliest pieces of pottery were probably made when people tried to strengthen baskets woven of grass and sticks. Some archeologists think that early potters in China may have covered the inside of woven baskets with clay so that the baskets would hold water. When the baskets were either placed on a fire or left there by mistake, the fire burned the grass away and turned the baskets into hard, durable pots.

30 Early potters in different parts of the world found interesting ways to **decorate** their work to make it more attractive. They **scratched** the surface of the soft clay to make decorative lines and designs. They also used glazes, which are a special kind of paint, to make clay objects smooth, shiny, and colorful. The Egyptians were already decorating their pottery with colors and designs

human-made objects of historical interest ownership

the way something is put together

long-lasting



about 5,000 years ago. Similar styles began to spread throughout the Mediterranean region. By 3,500 years ago, the people of the Greek island of Crete were 40 producing their own pottery decorated with designs and images of animals. These designs survived thousands of years and can still be seen in examples of ancient Greek art.

The pottery makers of China were the first to learn 45 to make porcelain, which is the finest and most fragile type of pottery. If you hold a piece of porcelain up in the air, light will shine through it. The Chinese exported porcelain to Europe, where it became highly valued. For many years, European potters tried to copy Chinese 50 porcelain, but it was not until 1710 that a German scientist finally learned how to make it. By the end of the 18th century, other European countries were also producing porcelain, and today France and England produce some of the finest porcelain in the world.

There are different ways to form a clay dish or bowl. The easiest method is to simply hollow out a clay ball, using your hands. Another simple method is to roll the clay into a long "rope" and then wind it into a shape. A third method is to spread the clay around something. The invention of the potter's wheel more than 5,000 years ago introduced an entirely new way to form a clay object. With this method, the potter places some clay in the center of a round, flat wheel that can turn very fast. As the wheel turns, the potter uses his or her 65 hands to shape the clay. Using a potter's wheel makes it possible to form clay objects that are smoother and more uniformly round.

A clay object is usually decorated first and then baked. Baking the clay at very high temperatures makes 70 it hard and strong. Firing also makes the glaze stick to the pottery. When the firing is completed, the potter must carefully remove the pottery from the oven and let it cool slowly. If it cools too quickly, it could **crack** and break.

Over the years, clay objects have served many purposes. Obviously, one of the most common uses of

make into a circular shape (around something)

completely

evenly; the same all around



75

55

pottery is for household dishes. Because pottery is strong and waterproof, it makes an excellent dish for carrying, storing, cooking, and serving food. Fired clay 80 has also been used to make bricks for building houses and to make tiles for covering floors. Ceramics are also incredibly heat resistant, so they can be used where metal would melt or become weak. Today, ceramics are important in industry and engineering.

very; extremely

One rarely discussed use of ceramics is for burial ceremonies. In some cultures, special ceramic objects were buried along with the dead person. Archeologists think these ceramic objects were made especially for burial ceremonies because their decoration is elaborate. 90 In some cultures, parts of a dead person's body were removed, placed in ceramic vases, and then buried with the body. Ceramic objects showing a dead person's title and offices held have also been found at burial sites.

Some people refuse to consider the making of 95 ceramics an art form because the objects created are so often useful things. At the same time, however, many of those useful ceramic things are extremely valuable. Some are even kept in museums. In the country of Iran, ancient pottery is considered to be so valuable to the 100 culture that there are harsh punishments for anyone who tries to take ceramic artifacts out of the country. The punishments range from paying money to time in jail. That is certainly a clear indication that ceramics are valued by many people.

85

# a

## Vocabulary

Write the correct word in each blank. Use a word only once, and use capital letters if they are necessary.

|     | fired                 | scratch          | wind                 | spread                 |
|-----|-----------------------|------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
|     | resist                | punishment       | crack                | artifacts              |
|     | possessions           | durable          | structure            | decorate               |
| 1.  | Many                  | from a           | ncient cultures are  | kept in museums.       |
| 2.  | You can use a glaze   | e to             | a piece of           | f pottery.             |
| 3.  | There is a serious _  |                  | for stealing ar      | ncient artifacts.      |
| 4.  | Ceramics are more     |                  | than tapestri        | ies.                   |
| 5.  | Ceramics are          |                  | in a special kind o  | f oven called a kiln.  |
| 6.  | You can use your fi   | ngernail to      | a                    | word into clay.        |
| 7.  | During the war, ma    | ny people put    | their most valuable  |                        |
|     |                       | _ into a suitcas | e and left the city. |                        |
| 8.  | When you are very     | hungry, it's dif | ficult to            | eating                 |
|     | something.            | •                |                      |                        |
| 9.  | The bowl wasn't we    | orth much beca   | use it had a long $$ | 3                      |
|     | in it.                |                  |                      |                        |
| 10. | Do you                | anyth            | ning on your bread   | before you eat it?     |
| 11. | I need to work on the | ne               | of my pap            | er; it is not clear    |
|     | how the ideas fit to  | gether.          |                      |                        |
| 12. | They tried to         |                  | the cloth around h   | is leg to stop the cut |
|     | from bleeding.        |                  |                      |                        |
|     | _                     |                  |                      |                        |



## Vocabulary

Do this exercise the same way you did Exercise a.

| indestructible | style  | finest    | fragile |
|----------------|--------|-----------|---------|
| punish         | entire | uniform   | purpose |
| incredible     | jail   | materials | in fact |

1. People have been decorating pottery for a long time. \_\_\_\_\_\_, the Egyptians were making designs on their pottery about 5,000 years ago.

| 2.  | Machine-made dishes are more than hand-made  |
|-----|--|
|     | ones.  |
| 3.  | If you drop something, it will break.  |
| 4.  | Do you know what are used to make porcelain?   |
| 5.  | The restaurant in town is also the most expensive.   |
| 6.  | His story is I just can't believe it.  |
| 7.  | Did your parents ever you by sending you to bed  |
|     | without dinner?  |
| 8.  | My grandmother spent her life in California. She   |
|     | never lived anywhere else.   |
| 9.  | In the 1970s, a funny of pants with wide legs at the   |
|     | bottom was popular.  |
| 10. | If you break a law, you might have to go to  |
|     | What is your for studying English?   |
| 12. | Something that is almost will last for a very long   |
|     | time.  |
| 100 |  |
| C   | Comprehension Check: True/False/Not Enough Information   |
| Wri | te $T$ if the sentence is true, $F$ if it is false, and $NI$ if there is not enough  |
|     | rmation in the text to answer the question. Change the false sentences to make   |
|     | n true, or explain why they are false.   |
|     | 1. Plates and bowls are examples of pottery.   |
|     | 2. The word <i>ceramics</i> comes from the Greek word for "potter's clay."   |
|     | 3. The earliest forms of pottery were made in Crete about 7,000 years  |
|     | 200  |
|     | ago.   |
|     | 4. Porcelain is made from hard, red clay.  |
|     |  |
|     | 4. Porcelain is made from hard, red clay.  |
|     | <ul><li>4. Porcelain is made from hard, red clay.</li><li>5. There is only one way to shape clay.</li></ul>  |
|     | <ul> <li>4. Porcelain is made from hard, red clay.</li> <li>5. There is only one way to shape clay.</li> <li>6. The Germans invented porcelain.</li> </ul>   |
|     | <ul> <li>4. Porcelain is made from hard, red clay.</li> <li>5. There is only one way to shape clay.</li> <li>6. The Germans invented porcelain.</li> <li>7. Pottery is more fragile than porcelain.</li> </ul>   |
|     | <ul> <li>4. Porcelain is made from hard, red clay.</li> <li>5. There is only one way to shape clay.</li> <li>6. The Germans invented porcelain.</li> <li>7. Pottery is more fragile than porcelain.</li> <li>8. The Chinese invented pottery.</li> </ul> |



## Comprehension Questions

Answer these questions in complete sentences.

- 1. What are ceramics?
- 2. What are ceramics used for?
- 3. Why are clay pots baked, or fired?
- 4. What are Chinese potters famous for?
- 5. What is the difference between pottery and porcelain?
- 6. How does a potter shape the clay?
- 7. What can we learn from the decoration on ancient pottery?
- 8. Do you think the making of ceramics is an art form? Why or why not?



#### Reading Strategy: Distinguishing Facts and Opinions

When you read, it's important to distinguish facts from opinions. A fact is something known to be true, while an opinion is what someone believes or thinks is true.

Identify each statement below as a fact or an opinion. Write Fact or Opinion on the

1. Some of the earliest pieces of pottery were probably made when people tried to strengthen baskets woven of grass and sticks.

2. Some archeologists think that early potters in China may have covered the inside of woven baskets with clay so that the baskets would hold water.

3. By about 3,500 years ago, the people of the Greek island of Crete were producing their own pottery decorated with designs and images of animals.

4. The pottery makers of China were the first to learn to make porcelain.

5. Baking the clay at very high temperatures makes it hard and strong.



| <ul> <li>6. Archeologists think some ceramic objects were made especially for burial ceremonies because their decoration is elaborate.</li> <li>7. Ceramic objects showing a dead person's title and offices held have been found at burial sites.</li> </ul> |
|---|
| offices field flave beeff found at buffar sites.  |
| f Vocabulary Expansion: Multiple Meanings   |
| Study the different meanings of each word below. Then read the sentences and choose the correct meaning for the word as it is used in each sentence. Write the letter of the definition on the line preceding each sentence.                                  |
| <ul> <li>wind</li> <li>a noun the natural movement of air outdoors</li> <li>b verb to wrap around</li> <li>c verb to turn and tighten</li> </ul>  |
| 1. The line of people in front of the store is so long that it winds  |
| around the corner.  |
| 2. There is a strong wind outside today.  |
| 3. You can wind a clock or a watch.   |
| fine  |
| <b>a</b> noun money paid as a punishment for wrongdoing <b>b</b> verb to order payment for wrongdoing <b>c</b> adjective excellent  |
| 4. That's a fine piece of pottery.  |
| 5. The police fined him for driving too fast.   |
| 6. If the police catch you speeding, you will have to pay a fine.   |
| <ul><li>uniform</li><li>a noun a special type of clothing worn by members of an organization</li><li>b adjective the same throughout</li></ul>  |
| 7. In most countries, the police wear uniforms.   |

8. When the height of the trees is uniform, they make a straight line.





## Grammar Review: Prepositions

| Complete the paragraphs with the | correct prepositions | (about, in, from, | of, for, |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------|----------|
| or <b>to</b> ).                  |                      |                   |          |

| The most ancient artifacts (1) our possession today were made out                                      |
|--|
| (2) clay many thousands (3) years ago. In fact, much   |
| (4) what we now know about cultures (5) the past we learned  |
| by studying their clay dishes and clay figures. Very few things made                                   |
| (6) other materials have survived to tell us (7) the cultures that                                     |
| produced them.   |
| Some people refuse to consider the making (8) ceramics an art  |
| form because the objects created are so often useful things. At the same time,                         |
| however, many useful ceramic things are extremely valuable. Some are even                              |
| kept (9) museums. In the country (10) Iran, pottery is   |
| considered to be so valuable to the culture that there are harsh punishments                           |
| (11) anyone who tries to take ceramic artifacts out (12) the   |
| country. The punishments range (13) paying money (14) jail or  |
| even death.  |
|  |
| h Sentence Combining   |
| Sentence Combining   |
| Read the example and the model combinations below. Then rewrite sentences 1 to 3 following the models. |
| Example: You can make pottery with clay. You heat it to about 500°C.                                   |
| Models: a. To make pottery, you heat clay to about 500°C.  |
| b. You can make pottery by heating clay to about 500°C.  |
| c. Pottery is made by heating clay to about 500°C.   |
| 1. You can make porcelain with white clay. You heat it to a very high                                  |
| temperature.   |
| a  |
| b  |
| С.   |

| 2. | You can make a cake with flour, eggs, sugar, and milk. You mix everything together and bake it for an hour.                      |
|----|--|
|    | ab   |
| 3. | A smoothie is a drink made of fruit, such as bananas and strawberries. You can make a smoothie by mixing the fruit in a blender. |
|    | a<br>b   |
|    | c  |
| 'n | Writing  |

Write about one of your possessions. Describe it, tell how you got it, and explain why it is important to you.

# **Cave Paintings**

lesson

3



## Before You Read

- 1. How old do you think this painting is?
- 2. What kind of animal is shown in the painting?
- 3. What does the painting tell you about the place where it was found?

#### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. On December 18, they **noticed** the half-covered entrance to an unnamed cave. Even though it didn't look like a very interesting cave, Eliette Deschamps pushed herself through the small opening.
- 2. The three explorers returned to their truck to get a ladder, and even though it was already dark, they decided to go down into the cave.
- 3. Many of the paintings are very detailed. **For instance**, several of the pictures of lions show the varied patterns of spots on their faces.
- 4. When Jean Clottes was asked about the cave paintings, he said, "I was deeply **moved** when I saw the paintings. They're as good as any art made anywhere in the world."

# 3 Cave Paintings



In December 1994, three <u>amateur</u> cave explorers— Jean-Marie Chauvet, Eliette Brunel Deschamps, and Christian Hillaire—were investigating an area in southeastern France. On December 18, they **noticed** the

not professional; doing something for fun, not as a job

5 half-covered entrance to an unnamed cave. Although it didn't look like a very interesting cave, Eliette Deschamps pushed herself through the small opening. To her surprise, she saw a huge cave below. The three explorers returned to their truck to get a ladder, and

even though

oven though it was already dark, they decided to go down into the cave. Once there, they discovered a <u>vast</u> network of rooms. On the walls were some of the most beautiful paintings they had ever seen.

very large; enormous

The cave discovered on December 18, 1994, is now called Chauvet Cave, after one of the amateur explorers



who discovered it. Archeologists who inspected the cave paintings soon after they were discovered estimated that the paintings were about 17,000 years old. A few months later, however, tests showed that 20 three of the animals in the paintings were at least 31,000 years old. That meant the paintings in Chauvet Cave were the oldest existing cave paintings in the world.

There are more than 300 paintings in Chauvet Cave. Seventy-three of the paintings are of a type of lion that 25 is now extinct. Other paintings show panthers, horses, mammoths, wooly rhinoceros, and other animals. There are also tracings of human hands as well as symbols such as dots forming a semicircle.

Many of the paintings are **extraordinarily** detailed. 30 For instance, several of the pictures of lions show the varied patterns of whisker spots that biologists today use to identify individual animals. The artists used the natural curves of the cave walls to make the animals look real. They used **shading** and color (black, red, and 35 yellow) to add depth to their paintings. When the French archeologist Jean Clottes was asked about the cave paintings, he said, "I was deeply moved when I saw the paintings. They're as good as any art made anywhere in the world."

The paintings in Chauvet Cave were most likely done by a number of artists. Some of the paintings are extraordinarily **sophisticated**. With simple lines and shading, the artists created exquisite pictures of wild animals in action. Some of the paintings, however, are 45 **stiff** and stylized, and others are quite **rough** and amateurish. Some archeologists have suggested that the painters worked with assistants. Perhaps the assistants made the rough paintings while trying to copy their teachers' paintings.

When the paintings in Chauvet Cave were discovered, they were perfectly preserved on the stone walls. No sunlight had entered the cave from the time the paintings were made until Chauvet and his friends found them. Unfortunately, the simple act of exposing paintings so that people can see them can cause the

copies made by drawing around something half of a circle extremely; very for example

complex perfectly made moving; doing something not showing movement well not very high quality



40

paintings to disappear. This happened to the paintings in another cave—within six months of the opening of the cave, the paintings had vanished. Now scientists know that they must enter caves carefully and prevent light and air from damaging the pictures. Today, Chauvet Cave is closed to the public, because even the breathing of a large number of people could damage the paintings.

Perhaps the most interesting thing about Chauvet
Cave is that it has forced archeologists to change their
ideas about art. For many years, archeologists believed
that it took thousands of years for humans to gradually
learn how to draw and paint. Chauvet Cave showed
that there were great artists 30,000 years ago. Jean

70 Clottes summed it up, saying, "Our ancestors did not need millennia of <u>trial and error</u> to achieve great art. Artistic capacity was one of the <u>components</u> of our species probably right from the start."

Chauvet Cave is only one of many caves in the
world that have been decorated by ancient paintings. In
Australia, South Africa, China and many other places,
extraordinary ancient works of art have been found.
Why did prehistoric people make these paintings?
Perhaps they believed that painting the animals gave
the artists special strength or powers. Perhaps the
paintings were part of a ceremony, or perhaps they were
thought to hold some sort of magic. The answer to this
question will probably always remain a mystery.

experimentation; testing parts



## Vocabulary

|     | amateur<br>tracing | identify            | curve                | semicircle                    |
|-----|--------------------|---------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------|
|     | stiff              |                     | preserved            |                               |
| 1.  | On January,        | 1, 2000, a new      |                      | started.                      |
| 2.  | Edison expe        | rimented with m     | any different mate   | erials while trying to invent |
|     | the light bul      | b. After years of . |                      | , he was finally              |
|     | successful.        |                     |                      |                               |
| 3.  | You can use        | a                   | to get up to         | the roof of the house.        |
| 4.  | A profession       | nal athlete earns n | noney for playing    | a sport, while an             |
|     |                    | athlete o           | loes not.            |                               |
| 5.  | When you as        | re driving a car, y | ou should slow d     | own when you come to a        |
|     | sharp              | in                  | the road.            |                               |
| 6.  | One way to         | make a copy of so   | omething is to mal   | ke a                          |
| 7.  | Before people      | le had refrigerato  | rs, they             | their food in                 |
|     | jars.              |                     |                      |                               |
| 8.  | Half of a circ     | cle is a            |                      | a l                           |
| 9.  | If you sleep       | on an uncomforta    | ble bed, your bac    | k might feel                  |
|     |                    | in the m            | orning.              |                               |
| 10. | When you w         | rite something, i   | t's a good idea to t | write a                       |
|     |                    | draft firs          | st, just to get your | ideas down on paper.          |
| 11. | Do you know        | w how to            | an o                 | riginal Navajo tapestry?      |
| 12. | The archeolo       | gists found an _    |                      | vase buried in the            |
|     | ground; it m       | ust be very valua   | ble.                 |                               |
|     |                    |                     | *                    |                               |
| D   | Vocabula           | ry                  | 3.77<br>3.77         |                               |
|     | notice             | components          | vast                 | extraordinarily               |
|     | moved              | means               | for instance         | sophisticated                 |
|     | expose             | in action           | although             | shading                       |
| 1.  | The word du        | rable               | long-last            | ring.                         |
| 2.  | Unlike a pon       | id or a lake, an oc | ean is               |                               |

| 3.  | 6. In very cold weather, it's not a good idea to your |   |              |
|-----|---|---|--------------|
|     | hands to the cold air.                                |   |              |
| 4.  | Did you   | how many people were in the r           | oom?         |
| 5.  | Only a very cold pers                                 | on would not beby                       | y the        |
|     | pictures of the disaste                               | er.                                     |              |
| 6.  | Einstein was an                                       | intelligent person.                     |              |
| 7.  |   | the paintings were made thousands of ye | ears ago,    |
|     | they are still in very g                              | good condition.                         |              |
| 8.  | Today, ceramics are us                                | sed to make some of the                 | of the       |
|     | space shuttle.  |   |              |
| 9.  | It's hard to believe that                             | at suchpictures we                      | re made by   |
|     | a young child.  |   |              |
| 10. | Most cave paintings a                                 | re of animals, the                      | paintings in |
|     | Chauvet Cave show li                                  | ions, horses, and even a panther.       |              |
| 11. | The photos taken of the                               | ne soccer match showed the players      |              |
|     |   |   |              |
| 12. | Artists use   | and color to add depth to the           | r paintings. |
| W _ |   |   |              |
| C   | Vocabulary Revie                                      | w: Synonyms                             |              |
| Mai | tch the synonyms (words                               | that mean the same).                    |              |
|     | 1. durable  | a. even                                 |              |
|     | 2. incredibly   | b. disagreement                         |              |
|     | 3. uniform  | c. cure                                 |              |
|     | 4. extensive  | d. indestructible                       |              |
|     | 5. controversy  | e. helper                               |              |
|     | 6. heal   | f. mostly                               |              |
| _   | 7. purpose  | g. extraordinarily                      |              |
|     | 8. assistant  | h. first                                |              |
|     | 9. original   | i. reason                               |              |
|     | 10. mainly  | j. vast                                 |              |

Instagram:@IELTS\_Matters

## Comprehension Check: Multiple Choice

Circle the letter of the best answer.

| •  | sy see   |
|----|--|
| 1. | . Chauvet Cave was discovered  |
|    | <ul><li>a. in the 19th century</li><li>b. by Jean Clottes</li><li>c. by amateurs</li></ul>   |
| 2. | . The paintings on the walls of Chauvet Cave are about years old.  |
|    | a. 300<br>b. 17,000<br>c. 31,000   |
| 3. | The paintings of animals in Chauvet Cave are   |
|    | <ul><li>a. well preserved</li><li>b. of one kind of animal</li><li>c. very rough</li></ul>   |
| 4. | The most sophisticated paintings in the cave are   |
|    | <ul><li>a. very rough</li><li>b. very realistic</li><li>c. very stiff</li></ul>  |
| 5. | Chauvet Cave is closed to tourists because   |
|    | <ul><li>a. it's difficult to get to the cave</li><li>b. visitors could damage the paintings</li><li>c. it's located on privately owned land</li></ul>  |
| 6. | The paintings in Chauvet Cave are well preserved because   |
|    | <ul><li>a. they have been protected from light and air since they were made</li><li>b. they were made with charcoal</li><li>c. they are very sophisticated</li></ul>   |
| 7. | The paintings in Chauvet Cave surprised archeologists because  |
|    | <ul><li>a. they were so sophisticated</li><li>b. they showed pictures of animals</li><li>c. they were stiff and stylized</li></ul>   |
| 8. | Before the discovery of Chauvet Cave, archeologists thought that   |
|    | <ul> <li>a. people painted for religious reasons</li> <li>b. exposing cave paintings to light and air wouldn't damage them</li> <li>c. people learned to draw and paint gradually over thousands of years</li> </ul> |

## e

## Comprehension Questions

- 1. How was Chauvet Cave discovered?
- 2. What is special about the paintings in Chauvet Cave?
- 3. What three words might you use to describe the best paintings in the cave?
- 4. What did the artists do to make the animal paintings look real?
- 5. According to the reading, there are three kinds of paintings in the cave. What are they?
- 6. Why are the paintings in the cave so well preserved?
- 7. Why is Chauvet Cave closed to the public?
- 8. How did the Chauvet Cave paintings change the way archeologists think about human development?



## Reading Strategy: Making Inferences

When you make an inference, you draw a logical conclusion based on the facts that you have.

Fact: Your friend has a broken arm.

**Logical conclusion or inference:** Your friend had an accident.

Illogical conclusion: Your friend fell down the stairs.

What can you infer from the information in each sentence below? Check  $(\checkmark)$  the possible inferences.

| 1. | When Eliette Deschamps noticed that there was a huge cave below the        |
|----|--|
|    | opening, the three explorers returned to their truck to get a ladder. Even |
|    | though it was dark, they decided to go down into the cave.                 |
|    | They were eager to see what was in the cave.                               |
|    | It was unusual to find such a large cave.                                  |
|    | The three explorers wanted to sleep in the cave.                           |
|    | ☐ The three explorers didn't usually go into caves at night.               |
| 2. | When the French archeologist Jean Clottes was asked about the cave         |
|    | paintings, he said, "I was deeply moved when I saw the paintings. They're  |
|    | as good as any art made anywhere in the world."                            |
|    | ☐ Clottes liked the paintings.   |
|    | Clottes was angry when he saw the paintings.                               |
|    | Clottes thought the paintings were very rough.                             |
|    | Clottes thinks the paintings are very sophisticated.                       |
|    |  |



## Vocabulary Expansion: Word Forms

Choose the right word form for each sentence below.

|    | Verb     | Noun                    | Adjective                     | Adverb                |
|----|----------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. | perfect  | perfection imperfection | perfect<br>imperfect          | perfectly imperfectly |
| 2. | mean     | meaning                 | meaningful<br>meaningless     |                       |
| 3. | trace    | tracing                 |                               |                       |
| 4. |          | roughness               | rough                         | roughly               |
| 5. |          | sophistication          | sophisticated unsophisticated |                       |
| 6. |          | amateur                 | amateur<br>amateurish         |                       |
| 7. | identify | identification identity | identifiable                  | identifiably          |
| 8. | notice   | notice                  | noticeable                    | noticeably            |

| 1. a. | Ву | the time | she was | three y | ears old, | she coul | d write | her name |
|-------|----|----------|---------|---------|-----------|----------|---------|----------|
|-------|----|----------|---------|---------|-----------|----------|---------|----------|

|    | b. | Athletes spend years trying to     | their style.               |
|----|----|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 2. | a. | Do you know the                    | of the word <i>stiff</i> ? |
|    | b. | She said tomorrow, but I think she | to say the day             |
|    |    | after tomorrow.                    |                            |
|    |    |                                    |                            |

3. If you put a clear piece of paper over the drawing, you can

\_\_\_\_\_it.

- 4. The \_\_\_\_\_\_ of some of the paintings surprised people.
- 5. The \_\_\_\_\_\_ of many ancient paintings shows that good art is nothing new.
- 6. He's usually a great actor, but last night he gave an \_\_\_\_\_\_ performance.

| 7. | She herself by giving her name and address.      |
|----|--|
| 8. | The colors on the paintings were barely I almost |
|    | didn't them.                                     |
|    | Grammar Review: Irregular Verbs                  |

Study the irregular verbs in this list. Then choose the correct verb form to complete each sentence. Use a verb from line 1 in sentence 1, and so on.

|    | Present | Past    | Past participle |
|----|---------|---------|-----------------|
| 1. | forgive | forgave | forgiven        |
| 2. | weave   | wove    | woven           |
| 3. | wind    | wound   | wound           |
| 4. | spread  | spread  | spread          |
| 5. | mean    | meant   | meant           |
| 6. | go      | went    | gone            |
| 7. | hold    | held    | held            |
| 8. | see     | saw     | seen            |

| 1. | I. She never                   | her brother for leaving home.               |
|----|--------------------------------|---|
| 2. | 2. He owns a tapestry          | by the Navajo.                              |
| 3. | 3. She a                       | bandage around her leg and then fastened it |
|    | with tape.                     |   |
| 4. | 4. International organizations | are working to stop the of                  |
|    | serious diseases.              |   |
| 5. | 5. He to                       | call her yesterday, but he forgot.          |
| 6. | 6. How many times have you     | to an art museum?                           |
| 7. | 7. A big celebration was       | soon after the discovery of the             |
|    | paintings.                     |   |
| 8. | 3. Very few people have        | the paintings in Chauvet Cave.              |



## Sentence Combining

Read the examples and the model combinations below. Then rewrite sentences 1 to 4 following the models.

*Example:* Some of the paintings are stiff and stylized. Others are quite rough.

- *Models:* a. Some of the paintings are stiff and stylized, and others are quite rough.
  - b. Some of the paintings are stiff and stylized, while others are quite rough.

| c. While some of the paintings are stiff and stylized, others are quite rough.  |
|---|
| 1. Some of the paintings show a type of lion. Other paintings are of horses.  |
| a   |
| b   |
| C   |
| <ul><li>2. One person pushed herself through the opening. The other two waited outside.</li><li>a</li></ul>   |
| b   |
| C   |
| Example: Many caves in the world have been decorated with paintings.  Chauvet Cave is one of them.  |
| <ul> <li>Models: a. One of many caves in the world that have been decorated with paintings is Chauvet Cave.</li> <li>b. Chauvet Cave is one of many caves in the world that have been decorated with paintings.</li> <li>c. Chauvet Cave, like many caves in the world, has been decorated with paintings.</li> </ul> |
| 3. Many archeologists have seen Chauvet Cave. Jean Clottes is one of them.  |
| a   |
| b   |
| C   |



| 4. | Many animals have become extinct. The wooly rhinoceros is one of them. |  |  |  |
|----|--|--|--|--|
|    | a  |  |  |  |
|    | b  |  |  |  |
|    | С  |  |  |  |
|    |  |  |  |  |



Imagine that you were the first person to see the paintings in Chauvet Cave. Write a short journal entry that tells what you saw and how you felt.



## Graffiti

### lesson





### Before You Read

- 1. What are the painters above using to paint the walls?
- 2. What is your opinion of the painting in the photo? Is it beautiful? Is it art?
- 3. Do you think people should be allowed to paint on public walls? Why or why not?



### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. Many examples of graffiti are **carved** on the walls of the ancient city of Pompeii.
- 2. Some of the graffiti on walls in Pompeii are **declarations** of love, while others are insults.
- 3. Some of the graffiti in Pompeii are complaints about store owners who were **cheating** people.
- 4. Of course, not everyone likes or approves of graffiti on city walls.
- 5. The city of Los Angeles bought several "paint stores on wheels" to **combat** graffiti. These vans traveled around the city looking for graffiti and painting over them immediately.

## 4 Graffiti



A quiet street, a blank wall, a can of spray paint—
and a young person goes to work writing graffiti. The
term *graffiti* means words or drawings scratched or
painted on a wall. The word comes from the Greek term *graphein*, which means "to write." People have been
writing graffiti on walls for thousands of years, but
today some people believe that certain types of graffiti
have <u>evolved</u> into a <u>genuine</u> art form.

Many of the oldest existing examples of graffiti are from the ancient city of Pompeii on the western coast of Italy. In the year 79, Pompeii was destroyed by the eruption of Mt. Vesuvius. Ash from the volcano buried the city, preserving much of it for us to see today. Carved on the walls of Pompeii are many examples of graffiti.

Some of the graffiti are **declarations** of love, while others are insults. Some of the graffiti are complaints about store owners who were **cheating** people, while others are

developed; changed true; real



political statements or rough drawings of people. Although the messages differ, the graffiti have one 20 important thing in common; they were all written without the permission of the owner of the wall. For historians, however, these graffiti are some of the few available sources of information about the lives of the common people of Pompeii and their everyday concerns.

While people have been writing graffiti on walls for thousands of years, in the 1960s a new type of graffiti started appearing on city walls in the United States. Some people called this type of graffiti "gang graffiti" because it was made by gang members to identify their territory. Gang graffiti consisted simply of the gang's 30 name, or "tag"; its purpose was to warn other gangs to stay away. A gang's tag had to be **distinctive** and easy to make quickly, but it was not meant to be artistic.

By the end of the 1970s, the practice of "tagging" was no longer mainly a gang activity. People who had 35 no connection to a gang were writing their names on flat surfaces all around the city. Their goal was to become famous by getting their name on as many surfaces as possible. However, as more and more people got involved in tagging, it became increasingly 40 difficult for writers to get attention. This led some writers to begin experimenting with ways to make their tags stand out. Some started making their tags bigger and **bolder**, while others combined letters with pictures. As tags became increasingly elaborate, 45 individual styles could be identified.

From tagging, graffiti developed into something called graffiti art, or aerosol art. Graffiti artists combined their unique letter styles with pictures to create large paintings that covered an entire wall or the 50 entire side of a subway car. During the 1970s and 1980s, the subway cars of New York became a moving museum of art for graffiti artists. The purpose of graffiti art, unlike that of gang graffiti, is self-expression and creativity. According to one graffiti artist, "Creating 55 graffiti is an art, and just like any other art, it requires tons of practice and work." Today, most graffiti art is

a group of young people who join together for support and protection

different from others; special

be noticeable; be easily seen stronger; clearer



25

made with spray paint, although some artists also use brushes and markers. For graffiti artists, just about anything can serve as a surface for their artwork, even rocks, roads, and billboards.

Of course not everyone likes or **approves** of the graffiti on city walls. In fact, most people think of creating graffiti as **vandalism** rather than art. For the majority of people, doing graffiti without someone's permission is not freedom of expression; it is **arrogance**. And the **presence** of graffiti in their neighborhoods makes many people feel less safe. Seeing graffiti all around them makes many people feel that danger is just around the corner.

the destruction of property for fun a feeling of self-importance

In the 1980s, many cities started taking action against graffiti. The city of New York, for example, started a <u>campaign</u> to get rid of graffiti on subway cars. By painting over the graffiti soon after they were made, the city was able to discourage graffiti artists from decorating the subway cars. Then in 1987, a new type

an organized effort to do something

of paint-resistant subway cars. Then, in 1987, a new type of paint-resistant subway car became available, making it impossible for graffiti artists to paint on the cars. The city of Los Angeles bought several "paint stores on wheels" to combat graffiti. These vans traveled around the city looking for graffiti and painting over them immediately. The city's goal was to discourage graffiti artists by painting over their graffiti within 24 hours. Other cities have used protective coatings and special building materials to prevent people from writing graffiti. Although these solutions have been effective,

Does this mean the end of graffiti? Not quite. In some countries, such as Japan, England, and the United States, graffiti artists are allowed to do their work on specially <u>designated</u> walls in a city. Graffiti art is shown in museums, and in Australia, well-known companies <u>sponsor</u> graffiti competitions. There are also hundreds of web sites dealing with graffiti art, as well as many books and instructional videos. And, of course, there are still people who will try to leave their mark on someone else's wall.

chosen; specified

help to pay for



they are very expensive.

70



## Vocabulary

|     | evolve          | carve          | cheat             | stand out                    |     |
|-----|-----------------|----------------|-------------------|------------------------------|-----|
|     | concern         | approve        | get rid of        | sponsors                     |     |
|     | genuine         | boldly         | arrogant          | according to                 |     |
| 1.  | If you          |                | on your taxes, y  | ou will get into trouble.    |     |
| 2.  | You can use a   | knife to       |                   | a piece of wood.             |     |
| 3.  | When you spe    | eak            | , peo             | ple will stop to listen.     |     |
| 4.  | All cultures ar | nd languages   | 8                 | over time.                   |     |
| 5.  | Do you have a   | any old cloth  | es that you want  | to?                          |     |
| 6.  | Shirin's paren  | ts didn't      |                   | of her boyfriend because     | he  |
|     | was dishonest   | t.             |                   |                              |     |
| 7.  | My boss is an   |                | person.           | He really thinks he's more   | 5   |
|     | important that  | n everyone e   | lse.              |                              |     |
| 8.  | My neighbors    | painted their  | r house pink so t | hat it would                 |     |
|     |                 |                |                   |                              |     |
| 9.  | Professional a  | thletes some   | times wear the na | ames of their                |     |
|     |                 | on the         | eir clothes.      |                              |     |
| 10. | The museum      | thought it ow  | ned a             | Van Gogh                     |     |
|     | painting, but i | n fact the pai | inting was a copy | 7.                           |     |
| 11. |                 | one th         | neory, the presen | ce of graffiti in an area ma | kes |
|     | people feel les |                |                   | -                            |     |
| 12  | Her parents ex  | enressed thei  | r                 | about her poor grad          | 29  |



## Vocabulary

|     | declared distinctive |                   |                 | -                     |
|-----|----------------------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
|     | campaign             |                   |                 | •                     |
| 1.  | Many people fee      | el nervous in the |                 | of a famous person.   |
| 2.  | Would you join a     | 1                 | to stop c       | hildren from smoking? |
| 3.  | How                  | are yo            | ou about the en | vironment?            |
| 4.  | Soon after the tw    | o countries       |                 | _ war, they started   |
|     | fighting.            |                   |                 |                       |
| 5.  | In most public p     | laces you can sm  | oke only in spe | ecially               |
|     |                      | areas.            |                 |                       |
| 6.  | What is the most     |                   | way to go       | et rid of a fever?    |
| 7.  | It costs a lot of m  | oney to           | g               | raffiti.              |
| 8.  | All famous fashio    | on designers hav  | /e a            | style.                |
| 9.  | You can go to jail   | l for             |                 |                       |
| 10. | Each salesperson     | in the company    | has a specific  | to                    |
|     | cover.               |                   |                 |                       |
| 11. | Young people so      | metimes join a _  |                 | because they want to  |
|     | be part of a group   | p.                |                 |                       |
|     |                      |                   |                 |                       |



## Vocabulary Review: Odd One Out

Circle the word that doesn't fit in each group.

- 1. adapt, cheat, evolve, change
- 2. get rid of, destroy, preserve, erase
- 3. genuine, extensive, vast, huge
- 4. approve of, agree with, preserve, like
- 5. indestructible, bold, durable, long-lasting
- 6. ancestors, artifacts, amateurs, sponsors
- 7. beautiful, distinctive, exquisite, attractive
- 8. kick, scratch, write, touch



### Comprehension Check: True/False/Not Enough Information

| 1. Ancient examples of graffiti still exist.                           |
|--|
| 2. Ancient graffiti were painted on walls.                             |
| 3. Modern graffiti are carved onto walls.                              |
| 4. The purpose of gang graffiti is self-expression.                    |
| 5. Graffiti artists started painting subway cars in New York in the    |
| 1950s.   |
| 6. The role of graffiti is a controversial topic.                      |
| 7. The creation of graffiti is a form of vandalism.                    |
| 8. Cities haven't spent much money removing graffiti.                  |
| 9. Some cities provide special walls for graffiti artists to paint on. |
| 10. There are fewer graffiti in New York today than there were 20      |
| years ago.   |

## e

## Comprehension Questions

- 1. Why did people in ancient Pompeii write graffiti on walls?
- 2. Why do historians find graffiti useful?
- 3. What is the purpose of gang graffiti?
- 4. What is a "tag"?
- 5. What do graffiti writers do to make their tags stand out?
- 6. How is a tag different from graffiti art?
- 7. How was ancient graffiti different from modern graffiti?
- 8. What is the future of graffiti?



## Reading Strategy: Identifying the Main Idea

When you tell what a paragraph is about, you are identifying its topic. When you state the most important information about the topic, you are identifying its main idea.

In the chart below, identify the main idea in each paragraph of the reading on pages 37–39.

| Paragraph       | Topic                     | Main idea   |
|-----------------|---------------------------|---|
| 1 (lines 1–8)   | definition of graffiti    | Graffiti, or words and drawings written on walls, have been around for a long time. |
| 2 (lines 9–24)  | ancient graffiti          | Graffiti provide us with information about people long ago.                         |
| 3 (lines 25–32) | gang graffiti             | A special kind of graffiti in the 1960s introduced gang graffiti.                   |
| 4 (lines 33–45) | tagging                   |   |
| 5 (lines 46–60) | graffiti art              |   |
| 6 (lines 61–69) | attitudes toward graffiti |   |
| 7 (lines 70–86) | getting rid of graffiti   |   |
| 8 (lines 87–96) | graffiti today            |   |



## Vocabulary Expansion: Collocations

Study the collocation chart below, and then complete the sentences.

get attention approval rid of noticed broken

| 1. | . Sometimes children misbehave because they want to get their parents'  |  |  |  |  |
|----|---|--|--|--|--|
| 2. | If you dye your hair green, you will be sure to get   |  |  |  |  |
| 3. | If you want to get a bad smell in the house, you can open the windows.  |  |  |  |  |
| 4. | If you drop a piece of porcelain, it might get  |  |  |  |  |
|    | She couldn't get her parents' to get married.   |  |  |  |  |
| l  | Grammar Review: Past Participles as Adjectives  |  |  |  |  |
| pa | ne past participle form of a verb can be used as an adjective. The past articiples of regular verbs end in <i>-ed</i> . They are the same as the past tense rms. Irregular verbs have irregular past participles. |  |  |  |  |
| Ех | camples: a painted wall a discouraged person a destroyed city a written word  |  |  |  |  |
| Ch | noose one of the following past participles to complete each sentence below.  |  |  |  |  |
|    | vandalized required carved designated<br>woven broken concerned baked   |  |  |  |  |
| 1. | The museum owns several tapestries made by the  |  |  |  |  |
|    | Navajo Indians.   |  |  |  |  |
| 2. | English is a course at this university.   |  |  |  |  |
| 3. | We had lasagna for dinner.  |  |  |  |  |
| 4. | They tried to sell me a toy.  |  |  |  |  |
| 5. | There is a beautiful design on the vase.  |  |  |  |  |

| 6. The wall was quickly cleaned up by the city.   |  |  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|--|
| 7. If there is a fire, you should go immediately to the   |  |  |  |  |
| waiting area.   |  |  |  |  |
| 8 parents should meet with their children's teachers to   |  |  |  |  |
| discuss the problem.  |  |  |  |  |
|   |  |  |  |  |
| Sentence Combining  |  |  |  |  |
| Read the example and the model combinations below. Then rewrite sentences 1 to 3 following the models.  |  |  |  |  |
| <i>Example</i> : There are many examples of graffiti in Pompeii. They are carved on the walls.  |  |  |  |  |
| Models: a. There are many examples of graffiti carved on the walls of Pompeii.  |  |  |  |  |
| <ul><li>b. Many examples of graffiti are carved on the walls of Pompeii.</li><li>c. Carved on the walls of Pompeii are many examples of graffiti.</li></ul> |  |  |  |  |
| 1. There are many kinds of graffiti. They are written or painted on walls.  |  |  |  |  |
| a   |  |  |  |  |
| b   |  |  |  |  |
| C   |  |  |  |  |
| 2. There are vans that travel around the city. They are filled with cans of paint.  |  |  |  |  |
| a   |  |  |  |  |
| b   |  |  |  |  |
| C   |  |  |  |  |
| 3. There are several international graffiti competitions. They are sponsored by   |  |  |  |  |
| famous companies.   |  |  |  |  |
| a   |  |  |  |  |
| b   |  |  |  |  |
| C   |  |  |  |  |
| <b>j</b> Writing  |  |  |  |  |
| Can graffiti be art? Write a paragraph in which you state your opinion and give reasons for it.   |  |  |  |  |

# Video Highlights

## a

#### Before You Watch

You are going to watch a video about the art of the Ndebele, one of South Africa's smallest ethnic groups. (See the photo.)
Working in pairs, use the words below to describe Ndebele art:

modern bold expert extraordinary

beautiful traditional complicated skillful



# b

### As You Watch

- 1. First, look at the sentences below. Can you guess the missing word or words? Now watch the video and complete the sentences.
  - a. In the beginning, the Ndebele built brown beehive-shaped huts. Today, Ndebele homes are \_\_\_\_\_\_\_.
  - b. The artwork on the houses is done by \_\_\_\_\_\_.



|    | c. People can't believe it, but when they paint the houses, the Ndebele                                 |    |
|----|---|----|
|    | work without  |    |
|    | d. There's a lot of competition, so each family has its own   |    |
|    | <del></del> ,   |    |
|    | e. The Ndebele are best known for the rings that the women wear arour                                   | nd |
|    | their   |    |
| 2. | Watch the video again. Write down the four types of art that are shown and a brief description of each. |    |

| Art         | Description              |  |
|-------------|--------------------------|--|
| photography | scenes from Ndebele life |  |
|             |                          |  |
|             |                          |  |
|             |                          |  |



### After You Watch

Read the following quote from the video. Then answer the questions that follow as a group.

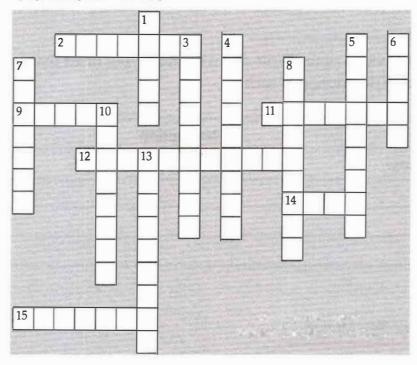
"Modern times have seen a decrease in the practice of cultural traditions. But the traditional Ndebele village is trying to preserve that artistic heritage."

- 1. Why are the Ndebele continuing their traditions?
- 2. How can art help to preserve culture?
- 3. Think about the lessons in this unit. How do these art forms reflect their cultures?
- 4. Are there any traditional villages in your country of origin? Describe them.
- 5. Would you like to live in a traditional village? Why or why not?



# **Activity Page**

#### **Crossword Puzzle**



#### Across

- 2. the same on every side
- 9. The \_\_\_\_\_ of trained singers to the Navajo population of an area is very low.
- 11. A \_\_\_\_\_ item is much more valuable than a fake one.
- 12. unique
- 14. The ocean is too \_\_\_\_\_ for us to see where it ends.
- 15. not professional

#### Down

- 1. not smooth
- 3. thousands of years
- 4. the people who lived before us
- 5. objects left behind by ancient civilizations
- 6. Clay becomes hard when it is
- 7. difficult to break
- 8. The Chauvet Cave paintings were \_\_\_\_\_ because they were not exposed to sunlight that could damage them.
- 10. unlike anything that came before
- 13. Gangs used "tags" to mark their

## **Dictionary Page**

### **Choosing the Correct Definition**

Words often have more than one meaning. Read the dictionary definitions of *serve*, *mean*, and *concern*.

serve /s3rv/ v. served, serving, serves 1 [I;T] to act or function as: This table can serve as a desk. 2 [I;T] to act as a servant, clerk, server, etc.: The waitress served me coffee. 3 [I;T] to be in public office: The mayor served four years. 4 [I;T] to put a ball into play: to serve in tennis 5 [T] (in law) to give officially: A sheriff served a summons on the woman to appear in court.

mean /min/ v. meant /ment/, meaning /'minŋ/, means 1 [T] to indicate, have significance: That flashing red light means to stop your car and wait for the train to go by. | What does this word mean? 2 [T] to intend to, want to do s.t.: I meant to call home, but forgot to do it.

-adj. 1 wanting to hurt s.o.: That boy is mean, a real bully. 2 frml. extremely bad in quality: During dry periods, poor farmers can lead a mean existence.

con-cern /kən'sarn/ n. 1 [C;U] care, attention: He shows constant concern about how his mother is feeling.
v. [T] 1 to be about: This letter concerns payment for my new TV. 2 to deal with, care about, or worry about: His mother's sickness concerns him a great deal.

Now read the sentences on the next page. Fill in each blank with the correct form of the correct word (*serve*, *mean*, or *concern*). Tell what part of speech the word is and write the number of the appropriate definition next to each sentence.



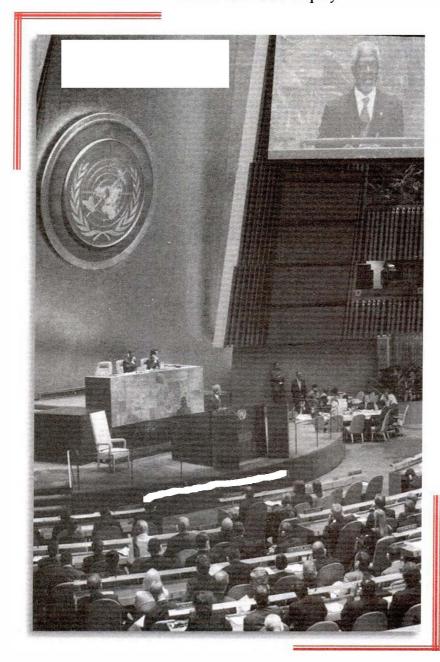
Instagram:@IELTS\_Matters

|     |   |      | Definition number |
|-----|---|------|-------------------|
| 1.  | His mother's sickness <i>concerns</i> him a great deal. | verb | 2                 |
| 2.  | The waitress me coffee.                                 |      |                   |
| 3.  | That boy is, a real bully.                              |      |                   |
| 4.  | The mayorfour years.                                    |      |                   |
| 5.  | This letter payment for my new TV.                      |      |                   |
| 6.  | During dry periods, poor farmers can lead a existence.  |      |                   |
| 7.  | I to call home, but forgot to do it.                    |      |                   |
| 8.  | This table canas a desk.                                |      |                   |
| 9.  | What does this word?                                    |      |                   |
| 10. | He shows constant about how his                         | 3    |                   |
|     | mother is feeling.                                      |      |                   |
| 11. | The tennis player the ball to                           |      |                   |
|     | her opponent.   |      |                   |

# Organizations

unit

An isolated individual does not exist. He who is sad, saddens others. —Antoine de Saint-Exupéry



## **The United Nations**

lesson

1



### Before You Read

- 1. What do you already know about the United Nations?
- 2. Why was the United Nations recently in the news?
- 3. Do you think the United Nations is an effective organization? Why or why not?



### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. The **charter** of the United Nations (UN) lists the four main goals and purposes of the organization.
- The headquarters of the United Nations is in New York City. This is where the General Assembly of the United Nations meets every year.
- 3. Five members of the UN Security Council are permanent members. The remaining 10 members are **elected** by the General Assembly.
- The United Nations also organizes large international meetings, where people meet to discuss important world issues. One meeting was about the uses and ownership of oceans.

## 1 The United Nations



In 1945, delegates from 50 countries met in San Francisco, California, to make plans for an organization called the United Nations. World War II had just ended, millions of people had died, and there was destruction everywhere. People hoped they could build a future of world peace through this new organization.

The **charter** of the United Nations (UN) <u>states</u> the four main goals and purposes of the organization. They are

says formally

- 1. To work together for international peace and to solve international problems;
  - 2. To develop friendly relations among nations;
  - 3. To work together for human rights for everyone of all races, religions, languages, and of both sexes; and
- 4. To build a center where nations can work together for these goals.

The United Nations has grown from an organization of 51 countries in 1945 to 191 nations in 2004. Today, almost every country in the world is a member of the UN. Each country that joins the United Nations signs an agreement that says:

- 1. All members are equal.
- 2. All members promise to solve international problems in a peaceful way.
- 25 3. No member will use force against another member.
  - 4. All members will help the UN in its actions.
  - 5. The UN will not try to solve problems within countries except to enforce international peace.

The headquarters of the United Nations is in New
York City. This is where the General Assembly, the main body of the United Nations, meets every year from September to December. The General Assembly is made up of representatives from each member country, who discuss issues related to peace and security and make recommendations. However, the General Assembly



does not have the power to enforce its recommendations. A second UN body, the 15-member Security Council, has the main <u>responsibility</u> for maintaining international peace. Five members—

40 Britain, China, France, the Russian Federation, and the United States—are permanent members of the Security Council. The remaining 10 members are elected by the

General Assembly and serve two-year terms. A third organ of the UN, the <u>Economic</u> and Social Council, is responsible for the social and economic work of the UN.

Over the years, the United Nations has had some <a href="successes">successes</a> in its <a href="role">role</a> of world peacemaker. It has <a href="negotiated">negotiated</a> 172 peaceful <a href="settlements">settlements</a> and helped to end two wars. It has also helped to slow the spread of <a href="nuclear weapons">nuclear weapons</a> by inspecting nuclear <a href="facilities">facilities</a> in 90 countries.

As a peacekeeper, the UN has also had a number of successes. Since 1945, UN peacekeeping forces have been involved in 56 missions. They have supervised ceasefires and the withdrawal of troops, and they have monitored elections. Over the years, roughly 130 nations have participated in the peacekeeping missions. In 1988, the UN peacekeeping forces received the Nobel Peace Prize. Unfortunately, member nations have been unwilling to give UN peacekeeping forces the independence and financial support they need to be even more effective.

In <u>evaluating</u> the success of the UN, it is important to keep in mind that the organization has many

functions in addition to preventing or ending wars. The United Nations is really a "family" of related organizations, which are working to provide a better life for people everywhere. One part of the UN family is UNICEF, an organization that provides food, medical

care, and many other services to poor children wherever they live. Thanks to the efforts of UNICEF, the

they live. Thanks to the efforts of UNICEF, the immunization rate of children in developing countries has jumped from 5 percent in 1974 to more than 80 percent today. Another part of the UN family is the

75 World Health Organization (WHO), which develops medical programs for people all over the world. In 1980,

duty

related to the study of how society uses resources

achievements; good results job; position brought people together to talk about and agree on

groups of soldiers

making a judgment about

- 55 - 55 WHO **announced** that, after 13 years of work, it had succeeded in ridding the world of the disease smallpox.

To support its humanitarian efforts, the UN employs thousands of people all around the world. They work as planners to increase production in farming and industry. They provide medical services, improve education programs, and spread scientific information. They develop programs that provide jobs and better living conditions. They also help countries control their population growth.

The United Nations also organizes large international **conferences**, where people meet to discuss important world **issues**. One conference was about the uses and ownership of oceans; another was about women. The United Nations also designates a **specific** problem for people to **focus on** each year. For example, the year 2003 was declared the International Year of Fresh Water. During these special years, people work together to find solutions to the designated problems.

Many people believe that the best way for the United Nations to work for world peace is through its humanitarian activities. They hope that promoting contact and communication among people will make wars less likely.

professional meetings

# **a** Vocabulary

|    | delegates                | cnarter     | state               | neadquarters      |
|----|--------------------------|-------------|---------------------|-------------------|
|    | responsibility           | facilities  | conferences         | negotiate         |
|    | election                 | maintain    | announced           | specific          |
| 1. | It's the job of the land | dlord to    | the a               | partment building |
|    | in good condition.       |             |                     | 1.5               |
| 2. | The                      | of the comp | oany is in an exper | sive new building |
| 3. | Many professions ha      | ve annual   | SO                  | that people can   |
|    | meet and share ideas     | <b>5.</b>   |                     |                   |
| 4. | We chose five            | to          | go to the meeting   | and then report   |
|    | back to us.              |             |                     |                   |

| 5.    | Some think it's t             | he mother's         |             | to c                   | liscipline the       |      |
|-------|-------------------------------|---------------------|-------------|------------------------|----------------------|------|
|       | children, while o             | others say it's the | e father's  | duty.                  |                      |      |
| 6.    | . It took months to write the |                     |             | of the United Nations. |                      | S.   |
| 7.    | The price of the              | car is \$5,000, and | d the own   | er won't               |                      |      |
| 8.    | Just                          | your na             | ame and a   | ddress. Don            | n't say anything e   | else |
| 9.    | We were surprise              | ed when the ow      | ner of the  | store                  | t                    | hat  |
|       | he was moving a               | iway.               |             |                        |                      |      |
| 10.   | The sports                    |                     | at my uni   | iversity are g         | great. There is a    |      |
|       | swimming pool,                | a skating rink, a   | nd sever    | al soccer fiel         | ds.                  |      |
| 11.   | She didn't have a             | a                   | rea         | son for quit           | ting the job. She    | just |
|       | wasn't very happ              | by there.           |             |                        |                      |      |
| 12.   | Half of the peopl             | le in town voted    | on          |                        | day.                 |      |
|       |                               |                     |             |                        |                      |      |
|       | Vocabulary                    |                     |             |                        |                      |      |
| 70.75 |                               |                     |             | unlan                  |                      |      |
|       | focus on<br>success           |                     |             | roles<br>mission       |                      |      |
|       | troops                        | withdrew            |             | evaluate               |                      |      |
| 1.    | One of the UN's               |                     |             |                        |                      |      |
|       | He                            |                     |             | _                      |                      |      |
|       | snake sitting in th           |                     | quienty     |                        | a viriali lie bavi a |      |
| 3.    | It takes luck and             |                     | а           |                        |                      |      |
|       | In their divorce _            |                     |             |                        |                      | eir  |
|       | money equally.                |                     | ,           |                        |                      |      |
| 5.    | The school's                  |                     | is to edu   | ıcate childre          | n to be curious a    | nd   |
|       | open-minded.                  |                     |             | ,                      |                      |      |
| 6.    | It's difficult to             |                     | your v      | vork when t            | here is a lot of no  | oise |
|       | in the room.                  |                     | ,           |                        |                      |      |
| 7.    | In order to give y            | ou a grade, you     | r teacher   | must                   | у                    | our  |
|       | work.                         | 9                   |             |                        | ,                    |      |
| 8.    | During the confli             | ct, the             |             | _ kept the p           | people in the tow    | 'n   |
|       | safe.                         |                     |             |                        | _                    |      |
| 9.    | A                             | was called          | d after the | e warring sid          | des agreed to pea    | ice  |
|       | talks.                        |                     |             | · ·                    | •                    |      |

| 10. One of the most serie | ous                      | problems in the country is       |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| the shortage of jobs.     |                          |                                  |
| 11. Each state sends two  |                          | _ to the U.S. Senate.            |
| 12. This year, the organi | zation will be focusi    | ng on the o                      |
| air and water polluti     |                          |                                  |
| -                         |                          |                                  |
| C Vocabulary Revi         | ew: Antonyms             |                                  |
|                           |                          |                                  |
| Match the antonyms (word  | s that are opposite in 1 | neaning).                        |
| 1. evil                   | a. fragile               |                                  |
| 2. properly               | b. uneven                |                                  |
| 3. durable                | c. hide                  |                                  |
| 4. entire                 | d. give in               |                                  |
| 5. uniform                | e. incorrectly           |                                  |
| 6. resist                 | f. useless               |                                  |
| 7. expose                 | g. good                  |                                  |
| 8. effective              | h. part                  |                                  |
|                           |                          |                                  |
| <b>d</b> Comprehension    | Check: True/False/       | Not Enough Information           |
|                           |                          |                                  |
|                           | ations was organized     | d at the beginning of World      |
| War II.                   | 11111                    | 1 1 0                            |
|                           | ssembly has more n       | nembers than the Security        |
| Council.                  | (1) (2) 11 (2)           | 21 1                             |
|                           | of the Security Cour     |                                  |
|                           |                          | closing nuclear facilities in    |
| different coun            |                          |                                  |
| -                         |                          | esponsible for holding elections |
| in different co           |                          | amitamiam antimitica             |
| 6. The UN is inv          |                          |                                  |
|                           | e UIN nas a special co   | onference that focuses on water  |
| problems.                 | f I INI mambar asset     | rice has increased since 1045    |
| o. The number o           | i on member count        | ries has increased since 1945.   |

- 9. Kuwait is a member of the UN.10. The United Nations helped Algeria become independent.
- e Comprehension Questions
- 1. What is one of the UN's humanitarian activities?
- 2. What are three of the main organizations of the United Nations?
- 3. What is the difference between the General Assembly and the Security Council?
- 4. What is the role of the UN peacekeeping forces?
- 5. What does the UN do to end wars?
- 6. What role has the UN played in the fight against smallpox?
- 7. How has the UN been successful?
- 8. How has the UN been unsuccessful?
- 9. Why are there wars even though UN members agree not to fight?
- 10. What do you think people talked about at the UN conference on oceans?



### Reading Strategy: Identifying Main Ideas and Details

In the chart below, identify the main idea in each paragraph. Then summarize the most important details in your own words.

| Paragraph       | Main idea  | Details   |
|-----------------|--|---|
| 1 (lines 1–6)   | People met in 1945 to set up the United Nations. | They were from 50 countries. They wanted to set up an organization that would bring peace to the world. |
| 2 (lines 7–16)  |  |   |
| 3 (lines 17–28) |  |   |
| 4 (lines 29–45) |  |   |
| 5 (lines 46–51) |  |   |
| 6 (lines 52–62) |  |   |
| 7 (lines 63–78) |  |   |
| 8 (lines 79–86) |  |   |
| 9 (lines 87–95) |  |   |





## Vocabulary Expansion: Word Forms

Choose the right word form for each sentence below.

|     | Verb      | Noun                          | Adjective   | Adverb   |
|-----|-----------|-------------------------------|-------------|--|
| 1.  | delegate  | delegate<br>delegation        |             |  |
| 2.  | state     | statement                     |             |  |
| 3.  | maintain  | maintenance                   |             |  |
| 4.  |           | responsibility                | responsible | responsibly  |
| 5.  | represent | representative representation |             |  |
| 6.  | announce  | announcer<br>announcement     |             |  |
| 7.  | succeed   | success                       | successful  | successfully   |
| 8.  | supervise | supervisor<br>supervision     | supervisory |  |
| 9.  | negotiate | negotiator<br>negotiation     |             |  |
| 10. | withdraw  | withdrawal                    |             | » (12 - 13 ) (13 ) |

| 1. | The government sent a of experts to the meeting             | •   |
|----|---|-----|
| 2. | The president made a short at the end of the                |     |
|    | meeting.  |     |
| 3. | He studies hard to his good grades.                         |     |
| 4. | His parents will let him use their car as long as he drives |     |
|    |   |     |
| 5. | My boss couldn't go to the conference, so I had to          | her |
| 6. | They the results of the election 12 hours after it          |     |
|    | ended.  |     |
| 7. | The UN hasn't always been in preventing wars.               |     |
| 8. | The of the project was responsible for all the              |     |
|    | problems.   |     |

| 9.  | The peace             | lasted for several years. |
|-----|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| 10. | The troops refused to |                           |



### Grammar Review: Noun Substitutes

In English, we often use a pronoun to replace a noun or noun phrase that has already been used in the sentence or in a previous sentence.

Example: The (UN) has had some success in its role of world peacemaker. It has negotiated 172 peaceful settlements and helped to end two wars.

Read the following sentences. Each pronoun is in **bold** print. Circle the noun or noun phrase that it replaces.

- 1. The peacekeeping forces have been involved in 56 missions. **They** have supervised ceasefires and monitored elections.
- 2. UNICEF provides help to children wherever **they** live.
- 3. In 1980, WHO announced that, after 13 years of work, **it** had succeeded in ridding the world of smallpox.
- 4. To support its humanitarian efforts, the UN employs thousands of people.
- 5. The UN employs thousands of people. **They** provide medical services and spread scientific information.
- 6. One conference took place in the 1970s. It was about the uses of oceans.
- 7. Although the UN has had some successes, it has not been able to stop all wars.
- 8. The charter of the UN states the goals of the organization, but it does not say how the UN will meet these goals.



### Sentence Combining

Read the example and the different model combinations below. Then rewrite sentences 1 and 2 following the models.

- *Example:* The General Assembly is made up of representatives from member countries. They discuss important issues related to peace.
- Models: a. The General Assembly is made up of representatives from member countries who discuss important issues related to peace.
  - b. The General Assembly, which is made up of representatives from member countries, discusses important issues related to peace.
  - c. Representatives of member countries who make up the General Assembly discuss important issues related to peace.

| 1.   | The Security Council has representatives from 15 countries. They have the main responsibility for maintaining peace.             |
|------|--|
|      | a  |
|      | b  |
|      | C  |
| 2.   | The UN peacekeeping forces are made up of people from many different countries. They monitor elections and supervise ceasefires. |
|      | a  |
|      | b  |
|      | C  |
| 1183 |  |



Writing

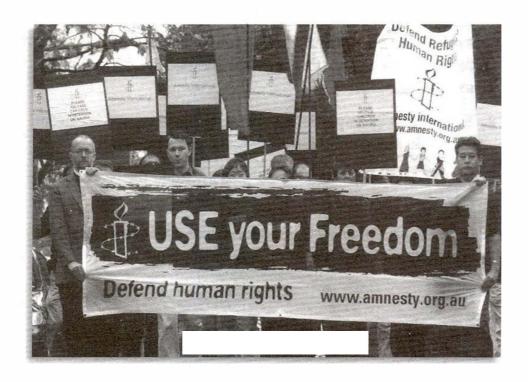
Do you have any ideas about how people in the world could live together more peacefully? Write about your ideas.



## **Amnesty International**

lesson

2



### Before You Read

- 1. What do you know about the organization Amnesty International?
- 2. Why are the people in the picture protesting?
- 3. Can you think of anyone who was imprisoned for his or her political or religious beliefs?



### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. In 1960, two students in Portugal were put jail for seven years. The reason? They had made critical **remarks** about their government. In England, a lawyer by the name of Peter Benenson read about this **incident** and decided he had to do something.
- 2. To maintain its **impartiality**, Amnesty International is careful to remain independent of all national governments.
- 3. In 1977, Amnesty International was **awarded** the Nobel Peace Prize.
- 4. In the 1980s, Amnesty International was able to increase the size of its **staff** and the number of offices worldwide.



## 2

## Amnesty International



In 1960, two students in Portugal were <u>sentenced</u> to seven years in **prison**. The reason? They had made critical **remarks** about their government. In England, a lawyer by the name of Peter Benenson read about this <u>incident</u> and decided he had to do something.

Benenson wrote a newspaper article called "The

Benenson wrote a newspaper article called "The Forgotten Prisoners." In it, he told about six people in six different countries who were in prison because of their beliefs. In the newspaper article, Benenson asked readers to join him in a year-long campaign against the

imprisonment of people for their political or religious beliefs. It was Benenson's hope that people would write letters to government officials calling for the **release** of these prisoners. In the first months of the campaign,

of the prisoners. By the end of 1961, the campaign had developed into a permanent international organization called Amnesty International, and it was already working on the cases of 210 prisoners.

Amnesty International's primary goal is to obtain the release of "prisoners of **conscience**." These are people who have been imprisoned for their beliefs; they have neither used violence themselves nor encouraged anyone else to use violence. Toni Ambatielos, one of the six prisoners of conscience whom Benenson wrote about in 1961, was put in prison for his trade union activities. Another one of the prisoners, Dr. Agostino Neto, was jailed for trying to improve health care in his country.

In the 1960s, many Amnesty members formed small groups to "adopt" a prisoner of conscience. When a group adopted a prisoner of conscience, it concentrated on helping that specific prisoner. Members of the group would regularly write letters to officials in the

given as a punishment

event; happening



Telegram:@IELTSMatters

prisoner's government, and when possible, they would try to help the prisoner's family. Today, there are more than 2,000 adoption groups, each focusing its efforts on two or more prisoners.

As Amnesty International grew, it expanded its
mission to include other victims of human rights <u>abuse</u>.
Today, the organization is working to make sure all
prisoners get a <u>fair trial</u> and to end all types of <u>torture</u>.
It is also involved in a major campaign to end the death <u>penalty</u>.

Amnesty International has become an effective organization in large part because of its impartiality and reliability. To maintain its impartiality, Amnesty is careful to remain independent of all national governments. It gets its money from individual contributions and special events. To maintain its reliability, Amnesty puts much time, effort, and money into getting accurate information about prisoners. Research teams carefully check the facts about human rights abuses. Fact-finding teams interview prisoners, family members, witnesses, and government officials. This information is used to create a profile with the

facts about each person's imprisonment.

Amnesty International works to help individual prisoners; it does not try to change the governments that are holding the prisoners of conscience. After some negative **publicity** in the late 1960s, Amnesty International adopted a rule that members of the organization could not work on cases inside their own country. The organization worried that members working in their own country would not be able to stay impartial.

In 1977, Amnesty International was **awarded** the Nobel Peace Prize. In the same year, Steve Biko, an African anti-apartheid activist, was imprisoned for his political activities. While Biko was in prison, he was tortured and eventually **murdered** for his beliefs. A popular musician named Peter Gabriel wrote a song called "Biko" to protest his murder and to support the work of Amnesty International. Over 25 years later,

cruel treatment

extreme physical abuse

punishment

gifts of money

people who saw something happen and can tell about it

information in the media that creates public interest in something



- when audiences hear the song "Biko," they often stand and join in the singing. In the mid-1980s, Amnesty International was helped by a number of other well-known musicians. To help the organization, the musicians gave concerts and contributed their profits to
- Amnesty International. The concerts gave the organization **valuable** publicity as well as financial support, and it was able to increase the size of its **staff** and the number of offices worldwide. In 2004, the United States chapter of Amnesty International released

employees

- the *Music for Human Rights* CD with some of the hottest musicians of the year and offered it for free to new members. The support of popular musicians helped to inform young people and interest them in Amnesty International.
- Amnesty International now has 1.5 million members in 162 countries. It continues to petition for improvements in prisons, the end of torture, and the release of prisoners of conscience. Amnesty members continue to tirelessly write letters and hold benefits,
- vigils, and fundraisers for prisoners of conscience around the world. And what happened to the six prisoners of conscience whom Benenson wrote about in 1961? All of them eventually gained their freedom.



### Vocabulary

|    | sentenced                | prison          | remarks               | incidents          |
|----|--------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
|    | release                  | cases           | conscience            | staff              |
|    | torture                  | fair            | trial                 | penalty            |
| 1. | Not being allowed        | to sleep is one | of the worst forms    |                    |
|    | of                       | ·               |                       |                    |
| 2. | Another word for jail is |                 |                       |                    |
| 3. | The teacher discov       | ered several _  | 0                     | of cheating on the |
|    | final exam.              |                 |                       |                    |
| ļ. | What is a                | nıı             | nishment for cheating | ng on a test?      |



| 5.  | He was to 10 years in prison for cheating the               |
|-----|---|
|     | company of thousands of dollars.                            |
| 6.  | During the murder, several witnesses told what they         |
|     | had seen.   |
| 7.  | When you a balloon or a kite, it usually goes up in         |
|     | the air.  |
| 8.  | There have been two in which people have been               |
|     | caught stealing from our office.                            |
| 9.  | More than 500 people are part of the organization's         |
| 10. | No one in the class made any about the difficulty of        |
|     | the exam.   |
| 11. | What is the for paying your taxes late?                     |
| 12. | His is bothering him because he lied to his friends         |
|     | and family.   |
| b   | Vocabulary  |
|     |   |
|     | impartial reliable contributions accurate                   |
|     | witness profile publicity award murder valuable staff abuse |
| 1   |   |
| 1.  | I don't take my car on long trips because it isn't very     |
| 2   | Most people would probably say that gold is more            |
| ۷.  | than silver.  |
| 3   | Movie companies spend a lot of money on for their           |
| 0.  | films.  |
| 4.  | It's difficult for parents to be when they are talking      |
|     | about their own children.                                   |
| 5.  | Everyone who is a member of the company's is                |
|     | invited to the party.                                       |
| 6.  | The punishment for is harsh.                                |
|     | Have you ever gotten an for something?                      |
| 8.  | If you a car accident, you should report what you           |
|     | saw.  |

| 9. It's possible to  | someone mentally or physically.             |
|--|---|
| 10. The newspaper did a v  | wonderful of the town, giving               |
| its history and politics   |   |
| 11. Thousands of people n  | nadeto help the victims of the              |
| flood.   | 140   |
| 12. Everything in the repo   | rt was except the date.                     |
|  |   |
| Vocabulary Review  | w: Definitions                              |
| Match the words with their d   | efinitions.                                 |
| 1. negotiate   | a. be noticeable                            |
| 2. withdraw  | b. bake at a high temperature               |
| 3. stand out   | c. make last for a long time                |
| 4. possess   | d. take back                                |
| 5. fire  | e. destroy                                  |
| 6. preserve  | f. copy                                     |
| 7. combat  | g. discuss in order to come to an agreement |
| 8. vandalize   | h. spread                                   |
|  | i. fight                                    |
|  | j. own                                      |
| Comprehension C  | neck: Multi <u>p</u> le Choice              |
| Circle the letter of the best ans                                    | swer.                                       |
| 1. Peter Benenson was a _  | in England.                                 |
| a. newspaper reporter  |   |
| b. lawyer  |   |
| c. student   | 1   |
| <ol><li>Benenson wanted to he<br/>a. prisoners of conscier</li></ol> | 1   |
| b. forgotten prisoners   |   |
| c. all prisoners   |   |

Instagram:@IELTS\_Matters

| 3. | Dr. Agostino Neto is an example of a  a. member of Amnesty International  b. prisoner of conscience c. trade union member   |
|----|---|
| 4. | Amnesty International is against  a. fair trials b. impartiality c. the death penalty   |
| 5. | Amnesty International spends a lot of time and money to  a. get accurate information about prisoners  b. attract new members to the organization  c. fight against negative publicity |
| 6. | Members of Amnesty International cannot work on cases  a. with other members  b. that get a lot of publicity  c. inside their own country   |
| 7. | Staying independent of all national governments helps Amnesty International to be  a. impartial b. flexible c. focused  |
| 8. | Amnesty International has been around since  a. 1977  |



b. 1969c. 1961

### Comprehension Questions

- 1. How did Amnesty International get started?
- 2. What inspired Peter Benenson to start Amnesty International?
- 3. Why does letter writing sometimes work to get the release of a prisoner?
- 4. What is a prisoner of conscience?
- 5. What do Toni Ambatielos and Dr. Neto have in common?
- 6. How does Amnesty International stay impartial?
- 7. Why is Amnesty International thought to be a reliable organization?
- 8. Why can't members work on cases in their own countries?
- 9. Who was Steve Biko?
- 10. How did Peter Gabriel help Amnesty International?





# Reading Strategy: Taking Notes in a Chart

Before you write a summary of a reading, it can help to make a chart of categories of information.

Complete the chart below with information about Amnesty International.

#### **AMNESTY INTERNATIONAL**

| Goals | Actions/activities | Successes |
|-------|--------------------|-----------|
|       |                    |           |
|       |                    |           |
|       |                    |           |



### Vocabulary Expansion: Prefixes

The prefixes *un-, im-, dis-, in-,* and *non-* can be put at the beginning of some words to add the meaning "not" to the word.

Choose the correct word from the pair to complete the sentence.

|    | 1. partial, impartial                  | 6. tairly, untairly          |
|----|--|------------------------------|
|    | 2. reliable, unreliable                | 7. effective, ineffective    |
| ,  | 3. accurate, inaccurate                | 8. concerned, unconcerned    |
|    | 4. successful, unsuccessful            | 9. approved, disapproved     |
|    | 5. supervised, unsupervised            | 10. original, unoriginal     |
| 1. | I like all types of ice cream, but I'm | really to                    |
|    | chocolate.                             |                              |
| 2. | He lost his job because he was so _    | <del></del>                  |
| 3. | The date on the message is             | It should say June 12        |
|    | not June 10.                           |                              |
| 4. | I think she has been                   | because she doesn't try very |
|    | hard.                                  |                              |
| 5. | Young children shouldn't be left at    | home                         |
| 6. | They won the game                      | ; no one cheated.            |

| 7. If the medicine is, you'll get better soon.                                  |
|---|
| 8. I don't understand why they are so about the air                             |
| pollution in their area.  |
| 9. They of the government's action, but there was                               |
| nothing they could do about it.   |
| 10. She wrote a very story. I've never read anything                            |
| like it.  |
|   |
| Grammar Review: Prepositions  |
| Meita the missing propositions on the lines                                     |
| Write the missing prepositions on the lines.                                    |
| In 1960, two students (1) Portugal were sentenced to seven years                |
| (2) prison. The reason? They had made critical remarks (3)                      |
| their government. In England, a lawyer by the name of Peter Benenson read       |
| (4) this incident and decided he had to do something. Benenson wrote            |
| a newspaper article called "The Forgotten Prisoners." In it, he told about six  |
| people (5) six different countries who were (6) prison because                  |
| (7) their beliefs. In the newspaper article, Benenson asked readers to          |
| join him (8) a year-long campaign (9) the imprisonment of                       |
| people (10) their political or religious beliefs. It was Benenson's hope        |
| that people would write letters to government officials calling for the release |
| (11) these prisoners. In the first months of the campaign, people sent          |
| thousands of letters demanding the release (12) the prisoners. By the           |
| end (13) a permanent  |
| international organization called Amnesty International, and it was already     |
| working on the cases (15) 210 prisoners.  |
|   |



### Sentence Combining

Read the example and the model combinations below. Then rewrite sentences 1 and 2 following the models.

*Example:* Amnesty International wants to maintain its impartiality. To do this, it remains independent of all governments.

Models:

a. To remain impartial, Amnesty International remains independent of all governments.

1. Amnesty International wants to maintain its reliability. To do this, it

- b. Amnesty International maintains its impartiality by remaining independent of all governments.
- c. Amnesty International remains independent of all governments in order to maintain its impartiality.



### Writing

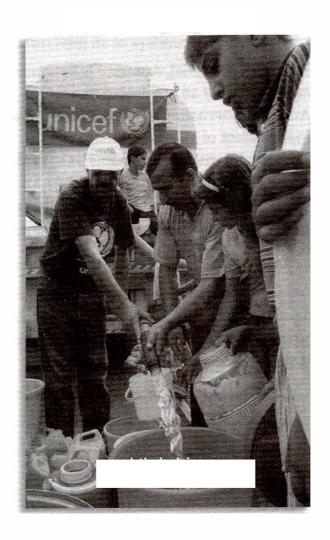
Have you ever written a letter because you wanted to change something? Write a letter to the director of your school about something you would like to change about your school. When you finish, share your letter with a classmate.



# **UNICEF**

# lesson

# 3



### **Before You Read**

- 1. What do you know about UNICEF?
- 2. How does UNICEF help children?
- 3. What kinds of help do you think children in the world need?



### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. The **acrony**m UNICEF means United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund.
- 2. UNICEF was created by the United Nations in 1946 to provide temporary help to children. In 1950, UNICEF's responsibilities were **expanded** to providing long-term help to children and mothers in all developing countries.
- 3. Among UNICEF's successes are the **eradication** of smallpox and the near eradication of polio.
- 4. Globally, there are now 42 million people with HIV/AIDS.
- 5. In cases of natural **disasters**, such as floods and earthquakes, UNICEF is able to respond quickly to people's needs, especially the needs of children.

Telegram:@IELTSMatters



The acronym UNICEF stands for United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund. This organization was created by the United Nations in 1946 to provide emergency help to children in post-war

- <sup>5</sup> Europe and China. In 1950, UNICEF's responsibilities were expanded to providing long-term help to children and mothers in all developing countries. Three years later, UNICEF became a permanent part of the United Nations system, and its name was changed to United
- 10 Nations Children's Fund. Despite the name change, the acronym UNICEF was kept, and today most people know of the organization by its acronym rather than its name.

UNICEF works with the governments of individual countries to provide three kinds of services. It plans and develops programs, trains people to work in these programs, and provides the supplies and equipment to help the programs function. The programs that UNICEF develops cover five main areas: immunization, education for girls, child protection, early childhood

20 education for girls, child protection, early childhood development, and HIV/AIDS.

In the area of immunization, UNICEF has had many successes, but it still has much work to do. Among its successes are the **eradication** of smallpox, the near

- eradication of polio, and a <u>sharp</u> decrease in the numbers of deaths from measles and tetanus. However, there are still countries that do not provide <u>routine</u> immunization, and in these countries diseases such as measles, diphtheria, whooping cough, tuberculosis, and tetanus <u>persist</u>. According to UNICEF, more than 2
  - tetanus **persist**. According to UNICEF, more than 2 million children die each year from diseases that could have been prevented by inexpensive vaccines.

A second goal of UNICEF is giving children the best possible start in life. In fact, more than half of UNICEF's <br/>
budget is used to help children in their first years of life by providing them with better health care, nutrition,

sudden

a plan to spend money or resources



water, sanitation, and education. But the needs of young children around the world are <u>overwhelming</u>.

According to UNICEF, "out of 100 children born in a year, 30 will most likely suffer from malnutrition in their first five years of life, 26 will not be immunized against the basic childhood diseases, 19 will lack <u>access</u> to safe drinking water and 40 to <u>adequate</u> sanitation, and 17 will never go to school." Each year, these problems cause the death of 11 million children under the age of 5. That means each day 30,000 children die, and most of these deaths could be prevented.

upsetting; overpowering

the ability to get not bad, but not very good; minimal

One of the biggest challenges facing UNICEF today is HIV/AIDS. Globally, there are now 42 million people with HIV/AIDS; more than 3 million of them are children under the age of 15, and 12 million are young people between the ages of 15 and 24. One of the primary reasons for the increase in the number of HIV/AIDS cases is ignorance about how the disease is spread. Surveys done in 60 countries have revealed that the majority of young people do not understand how HIV/AIDS is transmitted from one person to another. To change this, UNICEF focuses much of its attention on educating young people about the disease. In addition to its educational programs, UNICEF is also involved in taking care of people with the disease and protecting them from discrimination.

projects, it still plays a <u>vital</u> role in emergency
situations. In cases of natural **disasters**, such as floods
and earthquakes, UNICEF is able to respond quickly to
people's needs, especially the needs of children. For
example, when monsoon rains caused rivers in
Bangladesh to flood in 2004, millions of people were
affected. The floods <u>contaminated</u> drinking water
supplies, quickly spreading disease. UNICEF was able
to move in quickly with medical supplies and
equipment to set up sanitation systems. The

organization's rapid response to disaster prevented the

countries in southeast Asia in 2004, UNICEF was able to

75 deaths of many children. Again, when a tsunami hit

While much of UNICEF's work is now in long-term

very important

made unsafe or dirty

rush relief assistance to the area to help the survivors. In addition to providing safe drinking water in order to prevent the spread of disease, UNICEF was involved in helping thousands of children who were separated from or lost their parents when the tsunami hit, as well as many more who were traumatized by the event.

shocked emotionally

How does UNICEF pay for all this? Three-fourths of the organization's money comes from the contributions of governments. The remaining one-fourth comes from individual contributions, the sale of UNICEF's greeting cards and products, and special events held to collect money for the organization. For example, in 2004, a chef in London decided he had to do something to help the victims of the tsunami. He organized an event called UNICHEF, in which more than 150 restaurants joined together to raise money for UNICEF's Tsunami Children's Emergency Appeal. Restaurants participating in the UNICHEF event donated a large part of their earnings. With the help of people and organizations like that, UNICEF will be able to continue helping children around the world.

### Vocabulary

|    | acronym            | stand for         | emergency           | 7            | expands     |
|----|--------------------|-------------------|---------------------|--------------|-------------|
|    | eradicate          | sharp             | routine             |              | global      |
|    | budget             | overwhelming      | malnutritio         | on           | access      |
| 1. | Do you know wh     | at the stars on t | he U.S. flag        |              | ?           |
| 2. | What number wo     | ould you call in  | an                  | ?            |             |
| 3. | The expression U   | NESCO is an _     |                     | for United   | Nations     |
|    | Economic and So    | cial Council.     |                     |              |             |
| 4. | If you feel a      |                   | pain in your chest, | you shoul    | ld probably |
|    | go to the hospital | right away.       |                     |              |             |
| 5. | If UNICEF can _    |                   | polio, no one wi    | ill ever get | the         |
|    | disease again.     |                   |                     |              |             |
|    |                    |                   |                     |              |             |

| 6.  | The number of star                                   | s in the sky is $\_\_$ |                   | . I can't believe how |
|-----|--|------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
|     | many there are.                                      |                        |                   |                       |
| 7.  | 7. Only a few people have to the president's office. |                        |                   |                       |
| 8.  | Most individuals ar                                  | nd companies have      | e a               | so that they          |
|     | won't spend more t                                   | han they earn.         |                   |                       |
| 9.  | When a company o                                     | r business             | , it l            | has to increase the   |
|     | size of its staff.                                   |                        |                   |                       |
| 10. | When an activity be                                  | ecomes                 | , you d           | lon't think about it  |
|     | anymore. You just o                                  | lo it.                 |                   |                       |
| 11. | - 100  | _ is a problem whe     | erever people lac | k healthy food.       |
| b   | Vocabulary   |                        |                   |                       |
|     | adequate   | global                 | ignorant          | surveyed              |
|     | transmit   | discriminate           |                   |                       |
|     | contaminated   |                        |                   | persistent            |
| 1.  | It's against the law                                 | to                     | against son       | neone because of      |
|     | his or her race, relig                               |                        |                   |                       |
|     | If you drink   |                        |                   | •                     |
|     | Watching something                                   |                        |                   | a child.              |
|     | Access to clean water                                |                        |                   |                       |
| 5.  | Many children do n                                   | ot have access to _    |                   | sanitation.           |
|     | Soon after the earth                                 | •                      |                   |                       |
| 7.  | To find out what yo                                  |                        | erested in, we    |                       |
|     | more than 500 peop                                   |                        |                   |                       |
| 8.  | You can  | an e-mai               | l message from t  | the United States to  |
|     | China in seconds.                                    |                        |                   |                       |
|     | HIV/AIDS is a  |                        |                   |                       |
|     | A  | person keeps to        | rying. He or she  | doesn't give up       |
|     | easily.  |                        |                   |                       |
|     | Many people  | food                   | d and clothes to  | help the victims of   |
|     | the fire.  |                        |                   |                       |
| 12. | If you can't get acces                               | ss to the facts, you   | will remain       |                       |



### Vocabulary Review: Synonyms

### *Match the synonyms.* a. dependable \_\_\_\_\_ 1. torture \_\_\_\_ 2. remarked b. representative \_\_\_\_\_ 3. reliable c. primarily d. donate \_\_\_\_\_ 4. mainly \_\_\_\_\_ 5. delegate e. abuse \_\_\_\_\_ 6. immunization f. bold \_\_\_\_\_ 7. impartial g. fair \_\_\_\_\_ 8. contribute h. incident i. vaccination j. said Comprehension Check: Multiple Choice Circle the letter of the best answer. 1. UNICEF became a permanent part of the UN system in \_\_\_\_ a. 1946 b. 1950 c. 1953 2. UNICEF has always been a \_\_\_\_\_ organization. a. temporary b. permanent c. UN 3. UNICEF does not focus on \_\_\_\_\_ a. disease prevention b. peace negotiations c. immunization 4. UNICEF is still working to eradicate \_\_\_\_\_. a. measles b. smallpox c. vaccinations

80

| 5. | When drinking water gets, disease can spread quickly.  a. traumatized  b. contaminated  c. transmitted                            |
|----|---|
| 6. | More children lack than access to safe drinking water.  a. adequate sanitation  b. adequate education  c. adequate health care    |
| 7. | More than 3 million children under the age of 15 have  a. smallpox  b. measles  c. HIV/AIDS                                       |
| 8. | To stop the spread of HIV/AIDS among young people, UNICEF needs to provide  a. education about the disease b. safe drinking water |

# **2** Comprehension Questions

c. routine immunization

- 1. How has UNICEF changed over the years?
- 2. What three services does UNICEF provide to the governments of individual countries?
- 3. What are UNICEF's five main programs?
- 4. How has UNICEF been successful in the area of immunization?
- 5. In which area does UNICEF spend the largest part of its budget?
- 6. What are the goals of UNICEF's early childhood programs?
- 7. How many children are there with HIV/AIDS?
- 8. Why are people with HIV/AIDS discriminated against?
- 9. What are three kinds of disasters?
- 10. What can individuals do to help UNICEF in its work for children?



# Reading Strategy: Using a Dictionary

| Use a dictionary to find the definition of each acronym below. |  |
|--|--|
| 1. NATO  |  |
| 2. NAFTA   |  |
| 3. UN  |  |



# Vocabulary Expansion: Word Forms

Choose the right word form for each sentence below.

|     | Verb         | Noun                 | Adjective      | Adverb        |
|-----|--------------|----------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1.  | expand       | expanse<br>expansion | expansive      | expansively   |
| 2.  | eradicate    | eradication          |                |               |
| 3.  | persist      | persistence          | persistent     | persistently  |
| 4.  | transmit     | transmission         |                |               |
| 5.  | discriminate | discrimination       | discriminatory |               |
| 6.  | contaminate  | contamination        |                |               |
| 7.  | traumatize   | trauma               | traumatic      | traumatically |
| 8.  | donate       | donation             |                |               |
| 9.  | ignore       | ignorance            | ignorant       | ignorantly    |
| 10. | access       | access               | accessible     |               |

| 1. | They                   | their house by adding a third floor.        |
|----|------------------------|---|
| 2. | It's difficult to      | certain kinds of weeds.                     |
| 3. | If you are             | , you will eventually get a job.            |
| 4. | The                    | of radio signals was interrupted by the bad |
|    | weather.               |   |
| 5  | In the 1950s many laws | TATOTO                                      |

| 6 of drinking water can cause the death of thousands                        |
|---|
| of people.  |
| 7. The destruction of the town was a event for                              |
| everyone.   |
| 8. Some people money to Amnesty International, while                        |
| others give their time.   |
| 9. If you are of something, you can't change it.                            |
| 10. Today, public buildings must be to people in                            |
| wheelchairs.  |
|   |
| Grammar Review: Articles  |
|   |
| Write an article in each blank if one is needed.                            |
| (1) acronym UNICEF stands for (2) United Nations                            |
| International Children's Emergency Fund. This organization was created by   |
| (3) United Nations in 1946 to provide emergency help to children in         |
| post-war (4) Europe and China. In 1950, (5) UNICEF's                        |
| responsibilities were expanded to providing long-term help to (6)           |
| children and mothers in all developing countries. Three years later, UNICEF |
| became (7) permanent part of (8) United Nations system, and                 |
| its name was changed to (9) United Nations Children's Fund. Despite         |
| (10) name change, (11) acronym UNICEF was kept, and today                   |
| most people know of (12) organization by its acronym rather than its        |
| name.   |

Instagram:@IELTS\_Matters



### Sentence Combining

Read the example and the model combinations below. Then rewrite sentences 1 and 2 following the models.

*Example:* UNICEF has had many successes. However, it still has much work to do.

Models:

- a. Although UNICEF has had many successes, it still has much work to do.
- b. UNICEF has had many successes, but it still has much work to do.
- c. Despite having had many successes, UNICEF still has much work to do.

1. UNICEF spends most of its time on long-term projects. However, it still



### Writing

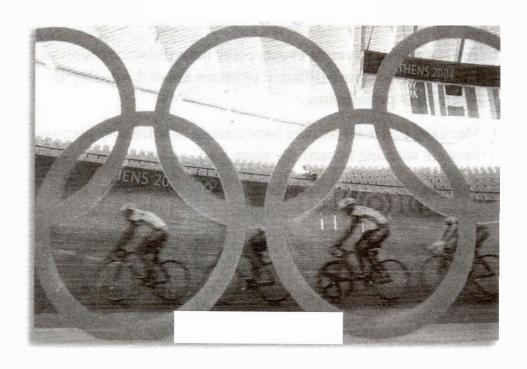
Think back to the chef in London who held an event called UNICHEF to raise money for UNICEF. Think of an event you could hold to raise money for UNICEF, using your special skills and talents. Write a description of the event, and then tell your classmates about it.



# The Olympic Movement

lesson

4



### Before You Read

- 1. What is your opinion of the Olympic Games?
- 2. Who is responsible for organizing the Olympic Games?
- 3. What do you think the goal of the "Olympic Movement" is?

### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. The Olympic Charter **guides** all decisions made about the Olympic Games.
- 2. The **judges** for Olympic events come from different countries. They often have very different opinions about the quality of an athlete's performance.
- 3. Members of a team usually have a sense of **solidarity** because they are working toward the same goal.
- 4. One goal of the Olympic Movement is to make people more aware of environmental problems.
- 5. You can **ponder** the problems for a while, but eventually you need to do something.

# **4** The Olympic Movement



The Olympic Movement <u>encompasses</u> organizations, athletes, and other persons who agree to be **guided** by the Olympic Charter.

includes

#### 5 Who Belongs to the Olympic Movement?

The Olympic Movement groups together all those who agree to be guided by the Olympic Charter and who **recognize** the **authority** of the International Olympic Committee (IOC)—namely, the International Federations (IFs) of sports on the program of the Olympic Games, the National Olympic Committees (NOCs), the Organizing Committees of the Olympic Games (OCOGs), athletes, **judges** and **referees**, associations and clubs, as well as all the organizations and institutions recognized by the IOC.

experts who give official opinions in a competition

#### Birth of the Olympic Movement

When he announced in Paris, on a winter's evening in 1892, the <u>forthcoming</u> re-establishment of the Olympic Games, Pierre de Coubertin was **applauded**, but nobody at the time imagined the scale of the project **entailed** in reviving the ancient Olympic Games, **appointing** a committee in charge of organizing them, and creating an international movement. The IOC was created on June 23, 1894; the first Olympic Games of the modern era opened in Athens on April 6, 1896; and the Olympic Movement has not stopped growing ever since.

about to take place

Olympism is a **state of mind** based on equality of sports which are international and **democratic**. It is a **philosophy** of life, **exalting** and combining in a balanced whole the qualities of body, will, and mind.

system of values by which a person lives praising highly

#### Goals of the Olympic Movement

The goal of the Olympic Movement is to contribute to building a peaceful and better world by educating youth through sport practiced without discrimination of any kind, in a spirit of friendship, solidarity, and fair

feeling or state of togetherness



play. The Olympic Movement is defined also by the numerous activities in which it **engages**, such as

- Promoting sport and competitions through the **intermediary** of national and international sports institutions worldwide.
  - <u>Cooperation</u> with public and private organizations to place sport at the service of mankind.

the act of working together

- Assistance to develop "Sport for All."
  - Advancement of women in sport at all levels and in all structures, with a view to <u>achieving</u> equality between men and women.

reaching; arriving at

- Opposition to all forms of commercial <u>exploitation</u> of sport and athletes.
  - unfair use

The fight against doping.

50

55

- Promoting sports ethics and fair play.
- Raising awareness of environmental problems.
- Financial and educational support for developing countries through the IOC institution Olympic Solidarity.

"All sports for all people. This is surely a phrase that people will consider foolishly <u>utopian</u>. That prospect troubles me not at all. I have <u>pondered</u> and studied it at length, and know that it is correct and possible," wrote Pierre de Coubertin in 1919. The future proved him right.

idealistic; wonderful but impossible

From http://www.olympic.org/uk/organisation/movement/index\_uk.asp. Reprinted with permission from the International Olympic Committee.





# Vocabulary

|     | encompasses   | guide          |           | authority       |          | judge         |   |  |
|-----|---|----------------|-----------|-----------------|----------|---------------|---|--|
|     | referees  |                | ng        | applauded       |          |               |   |  |
|     | state of mind                                       | democrati      | С         | philosophy      |          | exalted       |   |  |
| 1.  | . What does becoming a doctor?                      |                |           |                 |          |               |   |  |
| 2.  | . A delicious meal with friends always puts me in a |                |           |                 |          |               |   |  |
|     | good  |                |           |                 |          |               |   |  |
| 3.  | The UN peacekee                                     | ping forces do | not hav   | e the           |          | to            |   |  |
|     | enter into combat                                   |                |           |                 |          |               |   |  |
| 4.  | My history book -                                   |                | th        | ne 18th and 19t | h cen    | turies only.  |   |  |
| 5.  | His   | brings         | s him pea | ace of mind.    |          |               |   |  |
| 6.  | My cousin   |                | high scl  | nool basketball | game     | es.           |   |  |
|     | In a  |                |           |                 |          |               |   |  |
| 8.  | The school asked                                    | a professional | musicia   | n to            |          | the           |   |  |
|     | piano competition                                   | ı.             |           |                 |          |               |   |  |
| 9.  | Dogs can be trained                                 | ed to          |           | people wh       | no can   | not see.      |   |  |
| 10. | It was a great concert, and at the end people for   |                |           |                 |          |               |   |  |
|     | several minutes.                                    |                |           |                 |          |               |   |  |
| 11. | The coach   |                | the winr  | ning runner, sa | ying t   | that she was  |   |  |
|     | the best athlete he                                 | had ever seen  | n.        |                 |          |               |   |  |
| 12. | The author's last l                                 | ook was abo    | ut cave p | ainting, but hi | s        |               |   |  |
|     |   | book will.     | be about  | ceramics.       |          |               |   |  |
| 100 | <b>.</b>  |                |           |                 | <b>X</b> |               |   |  |
| \$  | Vocabulary  |                |           |                 |          |               |   |  |
|     | solidarity  | engage         | inter     | mediary         | coo      | operates      |   |  |
|     |   | ethical        | awar      |                 |          | pian          |   |  |
|     | pondered  | achieve        | appo      | ints            |          | ognize        |   |  |
| 1.  | Employers   |                | their en  | nployees when   | they     | refuse to pay | 1 |  |
|     | them what they de                                   |                |           |                 | •        | . ,           |   |  |
| 2.  | The president                                       |                | his ca    | abinet member   | rs. The  | ey are not    |   |  |
|     | elected.  |                |           |                 |          | ,             |   |  |



| 3.  | . The workers showed their when they all refus                 | ed to  |
|-----|--|--------|
|     | work for a day.  |        |
| 4.  | . A world without wars and environmental problems is a         |        |
|     | dream.   |        |
| 5.  | . The UN sometimes acts as an when two count                   | ries   |
|     | won't talk to each other.                                      |        |
| 6.  | . Ithe results of the study, but I couldn't explain            | them.  |
| 7.  | . He didn't me with my new haircut.                            |        |
| 8.  | . The committee members met for several hours, but they didn't |        |
|     | anything.  |        |
| 9.  | . If everyone, we can get the job done quickly.                |        |
| 10. | . Some organizations in only humanitarian activ                | ities. |
| 11. | . Do you think it's to take a sick day when you a              | aren't |
|     | sick?  |        |
| 12. | Most people are of the humanitarian crises in t                | he     |
|     | world, but they don't want to think about them.                |        |
|     |  |        |
|     | Vocabulary Review: Odd One Out                                 |        |

Circle the word that doesn't fit in each group.

- 1. traumatize, identify, torture, abuse
- 2. award, eradicate, get rid of, eliminate
- 3. trial, judge, emergency, witness
- 4. donate, contribute, give, expand
- 5. global, forthcoming, international, worldwide
- 6. cooperation, malnutrition, contamination, discrimination
- 7. reliable, impartial, responsible, ignorant
- 8. incredible, arrogant, vast, extraordinary



| d | Cor  | mprehension Check: True/False/Not Enough Information_             |
|---|------|---|
|   | _ 1. | The IOC encompasses the International Federations and the         |
|   |      | National Olympic Committees.                                      |
|   | 2.   | Athletes are part of the Olympic Movement.                        |
|   | _ 3. | The ancient Olympic Games were revived in the 19th century.       |
|   | _ 4. | The IOC was created to organize the modern Olympic Games.         |
|   | 5.   | The Olympic Movement's goal is to provide better sports           |
|   |      | programs for young people.  |
| 6 | 6.   | Both public and private organizations are involved in the Olympic |
|   |      | Movement.   |
|   | 7.   | The Olympic Movement supports the commercial exploitation of      |
|   |      | athletes.   |

8. Pierre de Coubertin believed that the goals of the Olympic

# **e** Comprehension Questions

- 1. Who belongs to the Olympic Movement?
- 2. What are the NOCs?
- 3. Who was Pierre de Coubertin?
- 4. When did the first modern Olympic Games take place?

Movement were impossible to achieve.

- 5. What role did the IOC play in the first Olympic Games?
- 6. Do you agree that Olympism is a state of mind? Why or why not?
- 7. What is the main goal of the Olympic Movement and how does it plan to reach this goal?
- 8. What do you think "All sports for all people" means?
- 9. What is the Olympic Movement opposed to?





# Reading Strategy: Inference

What can you infer from the sentences below? Check  $(\ensuremath{\checkmark})$  the possible inferences.

| 1. | The Olympic Movement encompasses organizations, athletes, and other persons who agree to be guided by the Olympic Charter.   |
|----|--|
|    | <ul> <li>The Olympic Movement is large.</li> <li>You don't have to be an athlete to be part of the Olympic Movement.</li> <li>The Olympic Movement is very old.</li> <li>It's expensive to be part of the Olympic Movement.</li> </ul>   |
| 2. | Olympism is a state of mind based on equality of sports which are international and democratic.  |
|    | <ul> <li>Olympism is something new.</li> <li>Olympism is something you can do.</li> <li>Olympism does not approve of discrimination.</li> <li>Olympism is about the way you think.</li> </ul>  |
| 3. | When he announced in Paris, on a winter's evening in 1892, the forthcoming re-establishment of the Olympic Games, Pierre de Coubertin was applauded, but nobody at the time imagined the scale of the project entailed in reviving the ancient Olympic Games.                            |
|    | People approved of Coubertin's idea of bringing back the Olympic Games.  Coubertin established the first Olympic Games.  Bringing back the Olympic Games was an enormous job.  People knew how much work it would take to bring the Olympic Games back, but they wanted to do it anyway. |
|    |  |



# Vocabulary Expansion: Word Forms

Choose the right word form for each sentence below.

|    | Verb      | Noun              | Adjective     | Adverb          |  |  |  |  |
|----|-----------|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|--|--|--|--|
| 1. | guide     | guide<br>guidance |               |                 |  |  |  |  |
| 2. | cooperate | cooperation       | cooperative   | cooperatively   |  |  |  |  |
| 3. | recognize | recognition       | recognizable  |                 |  |  |  |  |
| 4. | exploit   | exploitation      | exploitable   |                 |  |  |  |  |
| 5. | applaud   | applause          |               |                 |  |  |  |  |
| 6. | authorize | authority         | authoritative | authoritatively |  |  |  |  |
| 7. |           | ethics            | ethical       | ethically       |  |  |  |  |
| 8. | appoint   | appointment       |               |                 |  |  |  |  |

| 1. | If you need someone to  | <del>_</del>        | $_{-}$ you around the city, you $\alpha$ | can  |
|----|-------------------------|---------------------|--|------|
|    | pay for a tour          |                     |  |      |
| 2. | The children wouldn't _ |                     | , so they weren't allowed to             | o go |
|    | outside.                |                     |  |      |
| 3. | With a wig on, she wasn | ′t                  |  |      |
| 4. | of v                    | workers is unethica | l.                                       |      |
| 5. | There was loud          | at the              | end of the performance, and              | d    |
|    | people continued to     | fc                  | or several minutes.                      |      |
| 6. | Who                     | _ closing down the  | eroad?                                   |      |
| 7. | He had                  | reasons for qu      | itting his job.                          |      |
| 8. | Her                     | as the new vice pr  | esident will be forthcoming              | ζ.   |



# Grammar Review: Verb Tenses

Complete the sentences with the correct form and tense of the verb in parentheses.

| 1. When Coubertin announced the re-esta | ablishment of the Olympic Games, |
|---|----------------------------------|
| people (applaud)                        |                                  |
| 2. The Olympic Movement                 | growing since 1896.              |
| (not stop)                              |                                  |
| 3. Public and private organizations     | to make the                      |
| Olympic Games happen. (cooperate)       |                                  |
| 4. The Olympic Movement                 | all forms of commercial          |
| exploitation of sport. (oppose)         |                                  |
| 5. Pierre de Coubertin believed that it | possible for all                 |
| sports to be for all people. (be)       |                                  |
| 6. In the 1890s, no one                 | _ how much work would be         |
| involved in re-establishing the Olympic | Games. (recognize)               |
| 7. In June 1894, the IOC                | (create)                         |
| 8. The Olympic Charter                  | everyone involved in the         |
| Olympic Movement (encompass)            |                                  |



# Sentence Combining

Read the example and the model combinations below. Then rewrite sentences 1 and 2 following the models.

Example: Olympism is a philosophy of life. It exalts and combines the qualities of body, will, and mind.

Models:

- a. Olympism is a philosophy of life, exalting and combining the qualities of body, will, and mind.
- b. Olympism, which is a philosophy of life, exalts and combines the qualities of body, will, and mind.
- c. Olympism is a philosophy of life that exalts and combines the qualities of body, will, and mind.

|    | site of the Olympic Games.  |
|----|---|
|    | a   |
|    | b   |
|    | c   |
| 2. | The Olympic Movement is involved in many activities. It promotes sports |
|    | and raises awareness of environmental problems.                         |
|    | a   |
|    | b   |

1. The IOC is an important part of the Olympic Movement. It chooses the



### Writing

Write a description of your favorite Olympic event, but do not write the name of the event. Then ask another student to read your description and guess the event.



# Video Highlights

# **a** Before You Watch

- 1. Think back to the lessons on the United Nations and UNICEF, and answer the questions.
  - a. Why was the UN formed?
  - b. Why was UNICEF formed?
  - c. How do you think the UN Children's Forum might be related to these two organizations?
- 2. The words below are from this unit. Can you remember what they mean?

| issues    | accurate  | representatives | responsibility |
|-----------|-----------|-----------------|----------------|
| global    | focus     | specific        | vital          |
| awareness | delegates | recognize       | population     |

# **b** As You Watch

- 1. Five of the words above are used in the video. Circle the words that you think will be used. Then watch the video to see how these words are used. What is the context?
- 2. Watch the video again. Take notes, and answer the questions below.

| a. | Why did the UN decide to hold a children's forum? |
|----|---|
| b. | Who can participate? How?                         |
| c. | Where can you go to find more information?        |



# After You Watch

| 1. | Imagine you are 17 years old and have been invited to be a delegate to the |
|----|--|
|    | UN Children's Forum. What issues would you focus on? List your top         |
|    | three issues.  |
|    | 11.1200 100 4000   |
|    |  |
|    |  |

2. In groups, discuss your individual issues. As a group, decide which three issues are the most important and why they should be top priorities.

| Issue | Reasons why it's important |
|-------|----------------------------|
|       |                            |
|       |                            |
| 11    |                            |
|       |                            |

3. Present your group's issues to the class, using the vocabulary in the list. Take a vote of the class to determine what the top issues are.

# **Activity Page**

#### **Crossword Puzzle**

| 1 | 2031  |   |        | in the |    |    |    |     | 2       | 3 |    | Π   |         |    |     |   | 4 |     |      |       |
|---|-------|---|--------|--------|----|----|----|-----|---------|---|----|-----|---------|----|-----|---|---|-----|------|-------|
|   |       | 5 |        |        |    |    |    | 6   |         |   |    |     |         |    | 374 |   |   |     |      |       |
|   |       |   |        | 7      |    |    |    |     |         |   |    |     |         |    |     |   |   |     |      |       |
| 8 |       |   |        | 8      |    |    |    |     |         |   |    |     |         |    |     |   |   |     |      |       |
|   | 10111 |   |        | J.     | 9  |    | 10 |     |         |   |    |     |         |    |     |   |   | mb. | O OF | de la |
|   |       |   | 157111 | 17-5   |    |    |    |     | Table 1 |   |    |     |         | 11 |     |   |   |     | 12   |       |
|   |       |   |        |        |    |    |    |     |         |   |    | 13  | 14.00   |    |     |   |   |     |      |       |
|   |       |   |        |        |    | 为主 | VX |     | 14      |   |    |     |         |    |     | N |   |     |      |       |
|   | 15    |   |        |        |    |    |    |     |         |   |    |     |         |    |     |   |   |     |      | 7.5   |
|   |       |   |        |        |    |    |    |     |         |   |    |     |         |    |     |   |   |     |      |       |
|   |       |   |        |        | 16 |    |    |     |         |   |    |     |         |    |     |   |   |     |      |       |
|   |       |   |        | 36     |    |    |    |     |         |   |    |     | Marie 1 |    |     |   |   |     |      |       |
|   | 17    |   |        |        |    |    |    |     | als in  |   | 1  |     |         |    |     |   |   |     |      |       |
|   |       |   |        |        |    |    |    | 100 | C III A |   | Ť. | HAW |         |    |     |   |   |     |      |       |
|   |       |   |        | 18     |    |    |    |     |         |   |    |     |         |    |     |   |   |     |      |       |

#### Across

- 2. You look so different with contact lenses that I almost didn't \_\_\_\_\_\_ you.
- 7. Tsunamis, earthquakes, floods, and tornadoes are natural \_\_\_\_\_
- 8. job or position
- 10. We should allow some extra money for transportation in this month's \_\_\_\_\_.
- 11. chosen by the people
- 14. The \_\_\_\_\_ FBI stands for Federal Bureau of Investigation.
- 15. Murder can carry a \_\_\_\_\_ of life in prison.
- 16. correct
- 17. detailed, explicit
- 18. the opposite of knowledge

#### Down

- 1. One of the major goals of Amnesty International is to ensure that prisoners receive a \_\_\_\_\_ trial.
- 3. The acronym UNICEF stands for United Nations International Children's \_\_\_\_\_ Fund.
- 4. beliefs about right and wrong
- 5. worth a lot
- 6. The UN has organized committees to address a variety of global \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 9. working together
- 12. having to do with money
- 13. to think long and hard about something very serious



# **Dictionary Page**

### **Understanding Acronyms**

An acronym is an expression formed from the first letters of other words.

1. Use your dictionary to find the full name for each of the acronyms in the chart and what the organization does.

| Acronym | Full name                       | What it does                 |
|---------|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| FBI     | Federal Bureau of Investigation | investigates national crimes |
| CIA     |                                 |                              |
| NAACP   |                                 |                              |
| NASA    |                                 |                              |
| IRS     |                                 |                              |
| NOW     |                                 |                              |
| UN      |                                 |                              |
| EU      |                                 |                              |
| NASDAQ  |                                 |                              |
| YMCA    |                                 | 31/                          |
| NATO    |                                 |                              |

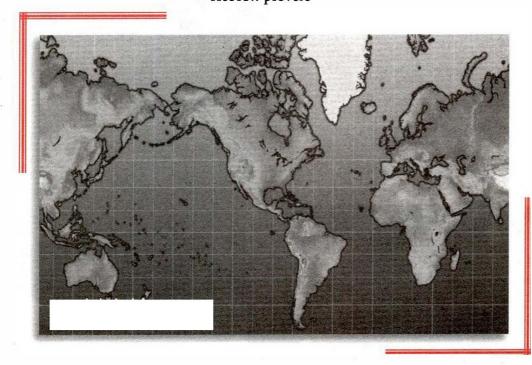
2. Complete the chart with acronyms from above.

| Government organizations | Nongovernment organizations |  |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| FBI                      |                             |  |
|                          |                             |  |
|                          |                             |  |
|                          |                             |  |
|                          |                             |  |



The place honors not the man; it is the man who honors the place.

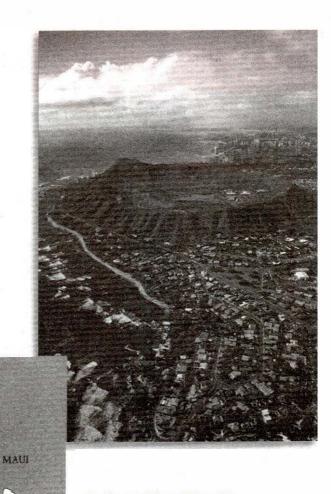
—Hebrew proverb



# Hawaii

lesson

1



### **Before You Read**

- 1. Have you ever been to Hawaii?
- 2. What are three facts you know about Hawaii?
- 3. What would you expect to find on these islands?



KAUAI

PACIFIC

OCEAN

OAHU

MOLOKAI

KAHOOLAWE

NIIHAU

HAWAII

### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. Many years ago, the island of Kahoolawe was covered with **vegetation**; today there is nothing growing on it.
- 2. European settlers brought **grazing** animals to the island. When the animals finished eating all of the vegetation, nothing remained to protect the soil from the wind.
- 3. Many of the people on the island suffered from Hansen's disease, formerly known as leprosy.
- 4. In the 1820s, **missionaries** from the United States arrived to teach the Hawaiian people about Christianity.

# 1 Hawaii



If you travel 3,700 kilometers southwest from Los Angeles across the Pacific Ocean, you will reach the islands of Hawaii, the 50th state of the United States. This group of islands has a land area of only 16,700 square kilometers, stretched over 2,500 kilometers of ocean. The eight main Hawaiian Islands are Niihau, Lanai, Kauai, Maui, Oahu, Molokai, Kahoolawe, and the Big Island of Hawaii.

Not all of the Hawaiian Islands are popular **tourist** spots. In fact, one of them is **uninhabitable** and **off-limits** to tourists. That's the island of Kahoolawe, the smallest of the Hawaiian Islands. Many years ago, this island was covered with **vegetation**; today it is **barren** and **inhospitable**. The **blame** for this goes first to

15 European settlers who brought **grazing** animals to the island. When the animals finished eating all of the vegetation, nothing remained to protect the soil from

without life responsibility for something bad



103

the Pacific winds. It's possible that as much as 2 million metric tons of soil gets blown off the island each year.

20 Kahoolawe was also used as a **target** by the U.S. Navy, and today there are still enough unexploded shells on the ground to **discourage** even the most **foolhardy** tourist. At present, the island is being restored, and scientists hope that someday Kahoolawe will be the beautiful place it once was.

A second rarely visited part of Hawaii is the island of Niihau, which is known as "The Forbidden Island." This privately owned island has fewer than 250 inhabitants, and you need an invitation from one of them to be allowed onto the island. The owner of Niihau raises cattle on his **secluded** ranch, and many of the people on the island work for him. People say that there is no electricity on the island and that the inhabitants have chosen to live in the traditional way in order to preserve traditional Hawaiian culture.

The remaining six Hawaiian Islands are open to tourists, though three of them attract far fewer tourists than the others. Molokai is home to more **native**Hawaiians than any other island. This island **boasts** the highest sea cliffs in the world and a wildlife park with rare animals from Africa and India. For many years, Molokai was one of the most beautiful "prisons" in the world. From 1865 to 1969, more than 8,000 people were

sent to this island. But the only <u>crime</u> these people had

committed was to suffer from Hansen's disease
(formerly known as leprosy). Until a treatment for the
disease was discovered in the late 1940s, anyone
suspected of carrying the disease was sent to live in
isolation on Molokai. Molokai is also home to the

Kalokeoli Fishpond, which is an example of the

50 Kalokeoli Fishpond, which is an example of the sophisticated aquaculture used on the island at least 700 years ago.

South of Molokai lies the island of Lanai. Lanai is a relatively dry island because the mountains on Molokai block the rain clouds from reaching the island. That doesn't mean Lanai is barren and **infertile**. Today, one-fifth of all Hawaiian pineapples come from this

hidden

a bad thing; illegal act



island. The island of Kauai has the honor of being one of the wettest places on Earth, with an average of 1,240 centimeters of rain per year.

The remaining three islands, Oahu, Maui, and Hawaii, are all popular destinations for tourists. With its wonderful surfing, beaches, and golf courses, Oahu draws the most tourists of all. Oahu also has the only royal palace in the United States and the largest wind generator in the world. The island of Maui draws visitors who want to see the world's largest inactive volcano, while the most daring tourists travel to the island of Hawaii, which has the world's most active volcano. Hawaii is also the largest island in the group. In fact, Hawaii is twice the size of the other seven islands combined. Hawaii also produces some of the world's best coffee and macadamia nuts and one-third of the world's supply of pineapples.

attracts

Of all the states in the United States, Hawaii has perhaps the most **ethnically diverse** population, and that may be a result of the way in which the islands were settled. The first people to make their home on the Hawaiian Islands sailed there from other Pacific islands between the years 300 and 600. Much later, the English explorer and mapmaker Captain James Cook sailed to the Hawaiian Islands. In 1778, Cook put the islands on his maps, and before long whaling ships were stopping there for supplies. In the 1820s, **missionaries** from the United States arrived to teach the Hawaiian people

varied

later, pineapples. As the farms grew and more farm workers were needed, the farm owners brought in workers from other countries. In 1852, workers arrived from China, followed by an <u>influx</u> of Japanese workers in 1868 and workers from the Philippines in 1906. Later, people from Korea, Portugal, and Puerto Rico came to work on the farms. Over time, people from the different ethnic groups intermarried, handing down a rich mix of

cultures to their children and grandchildren. For example, a Hawaiian child might have a Chinese-

about Christianity. Some of the missionaries settled

there permanently and started farms to grow sugar and,

arrival of a large number of people



Hawaiian mother and a Portuguese-Filipino father. Today, about 1.2 million people live in Hawaii, but only 10,000 are native Hawaiians.

Hawaii is known as the Aloha State. *Aloha* means "hello," "good-bye," and "I love you" in Hawaiian. It's a word the average tourist is likely to say many times while visiting the Hawaiian Islands.



### Vocabulary

|     | tourists         | missionaries         | uninhabitable         | influx              |
|-----|------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
|     | vegetation       | barren               | formerly              | blamed              |
|     |                  |                      | foolhardy             |                     |
| 1.  | When gold was    | first discovered in  | n California, there w | as an               |
|     |                  | of people wl         | no hoped to find son  | ne gold for         |
|     | themselves.      |                      |                       |                     |
| 2.  | Every city has a | ittractions for      | tha                   | t the local people  |
|     | rarely visit.    |                      |                       |                     |
| 3.  | Nothing can gro  | ow on that           | land.                 |                     |
| 4.  | The moon is      |                      | because it doesn't h  | ave oxygen.         |
| 5.  | They got         | for                  | committing the crin   | ne even though they |
|     | didn't do it.    |                      |                       |                     |
| 6.  | Only a           | perso                | on would do someth    | ing so dangerous.   |
| 7.  | Many religions   | send out             | to teach              | other people their  |
|     | beliefs.         |                      |                       |                     |
| 8.  | We hope to finis | sh our work by the   | e 15th of the month.  | That's our          |
|     |                  | date.                |                       |                     |
| 9.  | It's             | to never             | succeed at anything   |                     |
| 10. | The Hawaiian Is  | slands were          | calle                 | d the Sandwich      |
|     | Islands.         |                      |                       |                     |
| 11. | You need a lot o | of land if you are g | oing to let your hors | ses                 |
|     |                  | outdoors.            |                       |                     |
| 12. | During the wint  | er the land is bare  | e, but in the summer  | thick               |
|     |                  | covers the gr        | ound.                 |                     |

| b | Vocabulary |
|---|------------|
| b | Vocabulary |

|                                     | secluded                                       | native            | boast                  | off-limits             |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|-------------------|------------------------|------------------------|--|
|                                     |  | commit            | *                      |                        |  |
|                                     | infertile                                      | draws             | ethnic                 | diverse                |  |
| 1.                                  | Vandalism is a _                               |                   | in most places.        |                        |  |
| 2.                                  | What is the wors                               | t crime a pers    | son can                | ?                      |  |
| 3.                                  | The president's o                              | office is         | to mo                  | st people.             |  |
| 4.                                  | You cannot grow                                | anything fro      | m                      | seeds.                 |  |
| 5.                                  | What plants are _                              |                   | to your area?          |                        |  |
| 6.                                  | Young children li                              | ke to             | that the               | ey are very strong or  |  |
|                                     | very smart.                                    |                   |                        |                        |  |
| 7.                                  | For some people,                               | the excessive     | e rain in Kauai makes  | it an                  |  |
|                                     |  | place to l        | ive.                   |                        |  |
| 8.                                  | You won't get a lo                             | ot of visitors is | f you live in a very   | area.                  |  |
| 9.                                  | There are a lot of                             |                   | restaurants o          | n Oahu, so you can try |  |
|                                     | foods from many                                | different cul     | tures.                 |                        |  |
| 10.                                 | Ι  | that the          | se pineapples are from | n Hawaii, but I'm not  |  |
|                                     | certain.                                       |                   |                        |                        |  |
| 11.                                 | The people in my class were frombackgrounds.   |                   |                        |                        |  |
| 12.                                 | The great weather a lot of tourists to Hawaii. |                   |                        |                        |  |
|                                     |  |                   |                        |                        |  |
| C                                   | Vocabulary R                                   | eview: Defi       | nitions                | 1                      |  |
| Mat                                 | ch the words with t                            | heir definition   | S.                     |                        |  |
|                                     | 1. ponder                                      | a. sav            |                        |                        |  |
|                                     | 2. forthcomin                                  | -                 | something unfair       |                        |  |
|                                     | 3. remark                                      | c. get            | · ·                    |                        |  |
|                                     | 4. eradicate                                   |                   | ct someone or sometl   | ning                   |  |
|                                     | 5. cheat e. take advantage of                  |                   |                        |                        |  |
| 6. malnutrition f. donate something |  |                   |                        |                        |  |
| 7. guide g. think about             |  |                   |                        |                        |  |
|                                     | 8. exploit                                     |                   | money to               |                        |  |
|                                     |  |                   | •                      | n a lack of good food  |  |
|                                     |  |                   | n to arrive            | J                      |  |
|                                     |  | ,                 |                        | 10-                    |  |

Instagram:@IELTS\_Matters

| n      |
|--------|
|        |
|        |
|        |
| . Navy |
|        |
|        |
|        |
|        |
|        |
|        |
|        |
| the    |
| 3      |

# **e** Comprehension Questions

world.

- 1. Where are the Hawaiian Islands?
- 2. Why is the island of Kahoolawe barren and inhospitable?
- 3. How is Niihau different from the other main islands?
- 4. If you wanted to see an active volcano, which island would you visit?
- 5. Why does Lanai get so little rain?
- 6. What role did Captain Cook play in the history of Hawaii?
- 7. Why is the population of Hawaii so ethnically diverse?
- 8. Which island is the most interesting to you and why?

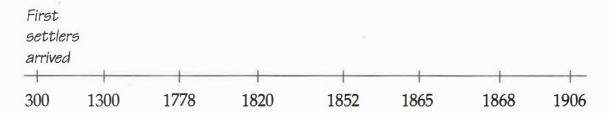




## Reading Strategy: Making a Timeline

Timelines are charts showing when important events or activities took place.

This timeline shows the years of several important events in the history of Hawaii. Look at the reading again to find the event that happened each year. Then write the event next to the year.





## Vocabulary Expansion: Suffixes

You can add a suffix to some verbs to make a noun.

Look at the chart below and circle the suffix that was added to make each noun. Choose the correct form of the word to complete each question, and then answer the questions.

|    | Verb       | Noun           |
|----|------------|----------------|
| 1. | attract    | attraction     |
| 2. | commit     | commitment     |
| 3. | discourage | discouragement |
| 4. | inhabit    | inhabitant     |
| 5. | vegetate   | vegetation     |
| 6. | combine    | combination    |
| 7. | preserve   | preservation   |

- 1. What would \_\_\_\_\_\_ you to Hawaii?
- 2. What types of \_\_\_\_\_\_ do people make during their life?
- 3. How could you \_\_\_\_\_\_ a young person from vandalizing something?
- 4. How many \_\_\_\_\_ does your city have?
- 5. Why do some people like to \_\_\_\_\_\_ all day?



109

| <ul> <li>6. What foods do you think are a good?</li> <li>7. Would you be willing to donate money for the of natural landscapes?</li> <li>h Grammar Review: Noun Substitutes</li> </ul>  |  |  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|--|
| Read these groups of sentences and study the pronouns in <b>bold</b> print. Circle the nour or noun phrase that each pronoun replaces.  |  |  |  |  |
| 1. Not all of the Hawaiian Islands are popular tourists spots. In fact, one of <b>them</b> is uninhabitable.  |  |  |  |  |
| 2. Many years ago, this island was covered with vegetation; today, it is barrer   |  |  |  |  |
| <ul> <li>and inhospitable.</li> <li>This privately owned island has fewer than 250 inhabitants, and you need an invitation from one of them to be allowed onto the island.</li> <li>The owner of Niihau raises cattle on his secluded ranch, and many of the people on the island work for him.</li> <li>With its wonderful surfing, beaches, and golf courses, Oahu draws the most tourists of all.</li> </ul> |  |  |  |  |
| Read the example and the model combinations below. Then rewrite sentences 1 and 2 following the models.   |  |  |  |  |
| Example: Molokai is home to the Kalokeoli Fishpond. It's an example of the sophisticated aquaculture used a long time ago.  |  |  |  |  |
| Models: a. Molokai is home to the Kalokeoli Fishpond, which is an example of the sophisticated aquaculture used a long time ago.  |  |  |  |  |
| <ul><li>b. Molokai is home to the Kalokeoli Fishpond, an example of the sophisticated aquaculture used a long time ago.</li><li>c. Kalokeoli Fishpond, which is on the island of Molokai, is an example of the sophisticated aquaculture used a long time ago.</li></ul>  |  |  |  |  |
| 1. Hawaii is home to Mt. Kilauea. It's the most active volcano in the world.  |  |  |  |  |



|   | Oahu is home to the Iolani Palace. It's the only royal palace in the United States. |  |  |  |
|---|---|--|--|--|
|   | a   |  |  |  |
|   | b   |  |  |  |
|   | С.  |  |  |  |
| j | Writing   |  |  |  |

Choose a place you know well. In the chart below, list several facts and opinions about the place. Then use the information in your chart to write a short description of the place for your classmates to read.

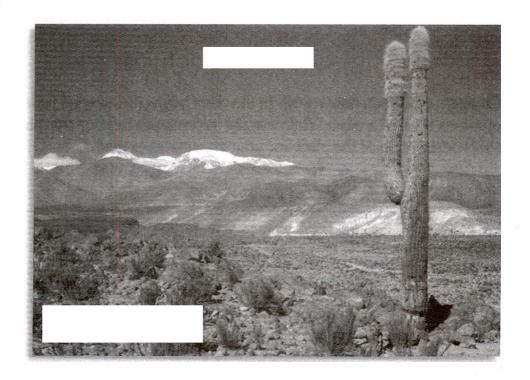
Name of Place:

| Facts | Opinions |  |
|-------|----------|--|
|       |          |  |
|       |          |  |
|       |          |  |
|       |          |  |
|       | ,        |  |

# **Deserts**

## lesson

2



### Before You Read

- 1. How would you describe a desert?
- 2. What kinds of plants and animals live in deserts?
- 3. Can you think of some countries that have deserts?



#### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. There is nothing **static** about deserts. The sizes and locations of the world's deserts are always changing.
- 2. One area's gain is another area's loss.
- 3. Trees and other vegetation acted as a **barrier** between the Taklimakan and Kumtag deserts.
- 4. Today, roughly 135 million people are at risk of losing their land to desertification and becoming **refugees**.

# 2 Deserts



They are some of the coldest places on Earth and some of the hottest. They exist on every continent except Europe, and together they cover roughly one-third of the land on Earth. We call them deserts, and they all have one thing in common—they get less than 250 millimeters of rain a year.

The world's largest and hottest desert spreads across
North Africa from the Red Sea to the Atlantic Ocean,
covering more than 9 million square kilometers. It's

called the Sahara, which means "wilderness" in Arabic.
But the Sahara was not always a barren wilderness. At
one time, it was an area of lush vegetation with huge
river systems; cave paintings found in the area reveal
that elephants, giraffes, and other animals once
lived there.

land unspoiled by humans

There is nothing **static** about deserts. The sizes and locations of the world's deserts are always changing. Over millions of years, as the climate changed and mountains rose, new dry areas developed. But within the last 100 years, deserts have been growing at a

frightening speed. This is <u>due</u>, in part, <u>to</u> climate change, but the greatest desert makers of all are humans.

because of; a result of

The process of turning productive land into desertlike land is called desertification. Desertification <u>takes</u>
<u>place</u> slowly as small pieces of <u>degraded</u> land spread
and <u>merge</u> together. Desertification can take place
naturally on the edges of existing deserts, or it can start
in small patches hundreds of miles away from the

happens

nearest desert. When there is a **drought**, for example, the winds and high temperatures dry the soil out. Eventually, the topsoil is blown or washed away, and nothing can grow in the area. Unfortunately, these natural processes are greatly <u>accelerated</u> by the activities of human beings.

speeded up

The human activity most destructive to the soil is overgrazing. When there are too many animals eating the vegetation in an area, the root systems of the plants are destroyed and the soil is left without a protective cover. The unprotected soil can then be easily **eroded**. Any land that is cleared of vegetation becomes **vulnerable** to desertification.

A second cause of desertification is improper irrigation. Farmers in many parts of the world **divert**45 water supplies for their crops. However, one area's **gain** is another area's loss. In China's Xinjiang Autonomous Region, for example, the building of dams and the withdrawal of water for irrigation have dried up the Tarim River. This has caused the trees and other
50 vegetation that acted as a **barrier** between the Taklimakan and Kumtag deserts to die off. Now the two

deserts are spreading toward each other, and they may

a lot; noticeably

Deforestation also contributes <u>significantly</u> to
desertification. In developing countries, 90 percent of
the people use wood for cooking and heating.
However, cutting down trees for firewood leaves the
land exposed to the sun. The smaller plants that grow
under the trees cannot survive without the shade of
the trees. And without leaves from the trees to enrich



it, the soil becomes poor and deprived of nutrients. Eventually, the smaller plants die, and nothing remains but barren land. Oftentimes, the soil is so degraded that it becomes as hard as concrete. Large pieces of land cleared to grow crops can become useless in just a few seasons.

While humans have shown themselves to be <u>adept</u> at making deserts, they can also stop their spread and even <u>reclaim</u> the land. In 1977, the United Nations invited representatives from around the world to a conference on desertification. The members of the conference came up with a plan to stop or reduce desertification and to reclaim the degraded land. They also designated June 17 as World Day to Combat Desertification and Drought. It is part of a United Nations campaign to make people more aware of

Some of the methods for stopping the advance of deserts are quite simple. Algeria, for example, has planted a green wall of trees across the edge of the Sahara to prevent more land from turning into desert. Mauritania planted a similar wall around Nouakchott, its capital. In Kenya, farmers have planted more than 7 million trees around croplands to reduce wind erosion.

And now the Chinese government has started the world's largest tree planting project—a green wall that will stretch for more than 5,700 kilometers.

In Iran, people put a thin layer of petroleum on the dry land to help the land hold water and newly planted vegetation.

To stop the overgrazing of land, some areas are requiring the careful **management** of **livestock**, while other areas have gone so far as to **ban** the grazing of certain kinds of animals on open land. To combat deforestation, people are being encouraged to use alternative methods of heating and cooking. Simple devices such as solar cookers and wind turbines can help to reduce people's dependence on wood.

Despite these efforts, the rate of desertification has doubled since the 1970s. Just since 1990, it is estimated

good

farm animals such as cattle, pigs, and chickens prohibit; refuse to allow



land degradation.

that roughly 6 million hectares of productive land has been degraded each year. Today, roughly 135 million people are at risk of losing their land to desertification and becoming refugees. Perhaps UN spokesman

105 Michel Smitall described the situation best when he said, "It's a creeping catastrophe. Entire parts of the world might become uninhabitable."

| a | Vocabulary |
|---|------------|
|   |            |

|     | wilderness             | lush               | static             | due to                |
|-----|------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
|     | take place             | degraded           | merge              | drought               |
|     | accelerate             | vulnerable         | diverted           | gain                  |
| 1.  | Several bad acciden    | nts that happened  | last week were     |                       |
|     | to the icy roads.      |                    |                    | Ÿ                     |
| 2.  | In rainy climates, th  | nere is            | vegeta             | ation.                |
| 3.  | As people get older    | and become less    | active, they ofter | n                     |
|     |                        | _ weight.          |                    |                       |
| 4.  | There are no roads     | through a          | are                | ea.                   |
| 5.  | Cars                   | when driv          | ers push on the    | gas pedal.            |
| 6.  | While the road was     | being fixed, the p | oolice             | all traffic           |
|     | onto a parallel stree  |                    |                    |                       |
| 7.  | During times of        |                    | , people have to   | travel in search of   |
|     | water.                 |                    |                    |                       |
| 8.  |                        | land cannot be     | used for agricult  | ure.                  |
| 9.  | The traffic is always  | s bad where the tv | vo highways        |                       |
|     | just outside the city. |                    |                    |                       |
| 10. | The food supply wa     | ıs                 | for several        | years, but then it    |
|     | dropped suddenly.      |                    |                    |                       |
| 11. | Erosion starts to      |                    | as soon as land    | loses its vegetation. |
| 12. | Without immunizat      | ion, children are  |                    | to a number of        |
|     | diseases.              |                    |                    | 2                     |

# **b** Vocabulary

|     | barrier  | significant           | adept               |                        |
|-----|--|-----------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
|     | erosion  | management            | livestock           | banned                 |
|     | despite  | gain                  | refugees            | catastrophe            |
| 1.  | Thousands of p   | eople help with the   | <u> </u>            | of the United          |
|     | Nations.   |                       |                     |                        |
| 2.  | It was a pretty  | quiet trip; nothing _ |                     | happened.              |
| 3.  | Cattle, pigs, and  | d goats are example   | es of               |                        |
| 4.  | The police put a   | a                     | across the roa      | d to stop the traffic. |
| 5.  | The land aroun   | d the house is in su  | ch terrible condit  | ion that it will take  |
|     | years to   | it.                   |                     |                        |
| 6.  | You can stop   |                       | by planting trees.  |                        |
| 7.  | Tourists are   | fı                    | rom visiting the is | sland of Kahoolawe     |
|     | because there as   | re still unexploded   | shells on the grou  | ınd.                   |
| 8.  | The war was a_   |                       | for everyone in     | volved.                |
| 9.  | He wore a coat   |                       | _ the hot weather   | :.                     |
| 10. | Doctors need to be at giving shots.                          |                       |                     |                        |
| 11. | The United Nations tries to provide temporary facilities for |                       |                     |                        |
|     |  | of war.               |                     |                        |
|     |  |                       |                     |                        |
| C   | Vocabulary   | Review: Antonyn       | ns                  |                        |
| Mat | tch the antonyms.  |                       |                     |                        |
|     | v  | s a. similar          |                     |                        |
|     |  | b. decrease           |                     |                        |
|     | 2. danch 3. diverse  | c. fail               |                     |                        |
|     |  |                       |                     |                        |
|     | 4. impartia  | e. accessibl          |                     |                        |
|     | 5. expand  |                       |                     |                        |
|     | 6. achieve   | f. imprisor           | l                   |                        |
|     | 7. focus on  | O                     |                     |                        |
|     | 8. accurate  | h. unfair<br>         |                     |                        |
|     | 9. gain  | i. ignore             |                     |                        |
|     | 10. release  | j. wrong              |                     |                        |
|     |  | k. lush               |                     |                        |

# d

# Comprehension Check: Multiple Choice

Circle the letter of the best answer.

| 1. | All deserts get less than millimeters of rain a year.  a. 25 b. 250 c. 2,500  |
|----|---|
| 2. | Today, the amount of desert on Earth is  a. decreasing b. increasing slowly c. increasing rapidly   |
| 3. | Natural processes and cause desertification.  a. human activities  b. droughts  c. winds  |
| 4. | The Tarim River in China dried up because  a. there was a drought  b. a barrier was built between the two deserts  c. water was diverted for irrigation |
| 5. | The first UN conference on desertification took place in  a. 1977  b. 1985  c. 1990   |
| 6. | In, a wall of trees has been planted around the capital of the country.  a. Algeria b. Mauritania c. Kenya  |
| 7. | To stop, some countries are encouraging people to use solar power.  a. overgrazing  b. deforestation  c. the diversion of water                         |
| 8. | You could say that desertification is a problem today than it was 30 years ago.  a. more serious  b. less serious  c. less understood                   |
|    |   |



### Comprehension Questions

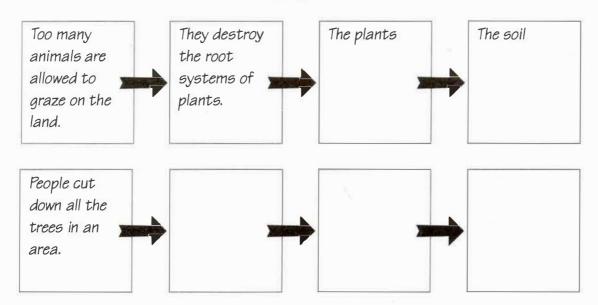
- 1. How would you define a desert?
- 2. What is unique about the Sahara Desert?
- 3. What is desertification?
- 4. What are some natural causes of desertification?
- 5. How does overgrazing affect the land?
- 6. Why is cleared land vulnerable to desertification?
- 7. What negative effects did the diversion of water from the Tarim River in China have?
- 8. Why is deforestation happening so quickly?
- 9. What can people use for heating and cooking instead of wood?
- 10. What are some ways to stop the process of desertification?
- 11. Do you agree with Michel Smitall's opinion of desertification? Why or why not?



### Reading Strategy: Identifying Cause and Effect

When you read a text that gives the causes and effects of something, you can improve your understanding by making a cause and effect chain with information from the text.

In the two chains below, add the missing information.





## Vocabulary Expansion: Collocations

Look back over the reading on pages 113–116 to find another word to add to each list below.

- 1. Things you can **clear**: the table, the room, \_\_\_\_\_
- 2. Things you can **grow**: food, flowers,\_\_\_\_\_
- 3. Things you can reduce: the spread of a disease, \_\_\_\_\_
- 4. Things that can merge: two roads, two rivers, two \_\_\_\_\_\_
- 5. Things that you can **plant**: flowers, \_\_\_\_\_



### Grammar Review: Prepositions

Write the missing prepositions on the lines.

To stop the overgrazing (1) \_\_\_\_\_ land, some areas are requiring the careful management (2) \_\_\_\_ livestock, while other areas have gone so far as to ban the grazing (3) \_\_\_\_ certain kinds of animals (4) \_\_\_\_ open land. To combat deforestation, people are being encouraged to use alternative methods (5) \_\_\_\_ heating and cooking. Simple devices such as solar cookers and wind turbines can help to reduce people's dependence (6) \_\_\_\_ wood.

# i Sentence Combining

Read the example and the model combinations below. Then rewrite sentences 1 and 2 following the models.

Example: Large pieces of land are cleared to grow crops. In just a few seasons, the land becomes useless.

Models:

- a. Large pieces of land are cleared to grow crops, but in just a few seasons the land becomes useless.
- b. Large pieces of land cleared to grow crops become useless in just a few seasons.
- c. When large pieces of land are cleared to grow crops, the land becomes useless in just a few seasons.

| Rivers are diverted to irrigate crops. Before long, the rivers dry up.              |
|---|
| a   |
| cAnimals are allowed to graze on the land. They destroy the root systems of plants. |
| ab.   |
|   |



#### Writing

Choose one of the activities below or think of one of your own:

driving cars exploring space watching TV killing insects

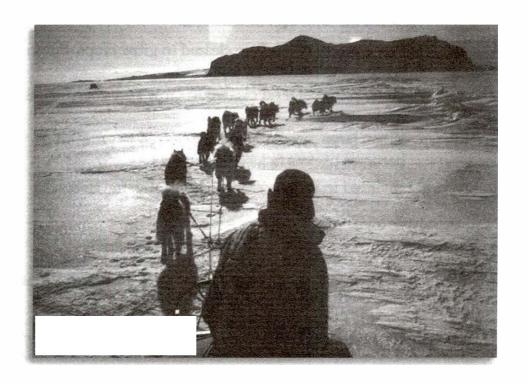
learning foreign languages hosting the Olympic Games

Make a cause and effect chain identifying the effects of this activity. Then summarize your ideas in a paragraph for your classmates to read.

# **Antarctica**

## lesson

3



### **Before You Read**

- 1. What is the climate like in Antarctica?
- 2. What kinds of animals live there?
- 3. What kinds of research do you think scientists are doing there?

#### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. Walking 2,700 kilometers across Antarctica is no easy feat.
- 2. While the surface of Antarctica is inhospitable to most living things, the water surrounding the continent is **teeming** with living creatures.
- 3. In 1959, the Antarctic **Treaty** established Antarctica as a special area to be governed internationally and used for scientific research.
- 4. The few scientists who remain in Antarctica for the winter have only radios, phones, and the Internet to **link** them to the rest of the world. After six or seven months, a plane returns with supplies and releases the scientists from their **solitude**.

# 3 Antarctica



In 2001, Ann Bancroft and Liv Arnesen traveled 2,700 kilometers on foot across Antarctica, each pulling a sled carrying 100 kilograms of food and equipment. Crossing this land of **extremes** was no easy **feat**. The temperature in Antarctica is often an **unimaginable** –40°C—the temperature at which skin and **flesh** freeze! Antarctica holds the record for the coldest temperature ever measured on Earth, which is –89.2°C.

the soft substance beneath the skin

Antarctica contains **approximately** 70 percent of the world's fresh water supply, and yet it is considered to be one of the world's largest deserts. That's because Antarctica's **enormous** supply of fresh water is locked up in ice that averages over two kilometers in thickness. If the ice sheets melted, the seas would rise as much as 60 meters. However, like all other deserts on Earth,

Antarctica receives less than 250 millimeters of rain a year. It's hard to believe that, 500 million years ago, Antarctica had a warm climate and a cover of lush vegetation.

Despite the enormous size of the continent, only a few <u>invertebrates</u> can survive on the Antarctic <u>peninsula</u>, and even they are rare. The largest of this group is a type of midge, which grows to the <u>colossal</u> size of 12 millimeters. The only plant life that can survive in this harsh climate consists mainly of algae, moss, and lichen.

While the surface of Antarctica is inhospitable to most living things, the water surrounding the continent is **teeming** with living creatures. At the bottom of the food chain in Antarctic waters is a hardy type of algae. During the winter, the algae live between the layers of snow on the sea ice, but when the ice breaks open in the spring, the algae pour into the ocean. Huge numbers of krill, tiny sea animals that are less than eight centimeters long, feed on the algae. The krill, in turn, are a vital source of food for seabirds, fish, seals,

Animals are not the only creatures drawn to the land of extremes. In 1959, the Antarctic **Treaty** established

40 Antarctica as a special area to be governed internationally and used for scientific research. The treaty declared, "It is in the interest of all mankind that Antarctica shall continue to be used **forever** for peaceful purposes and shall not become the **scene** or object of international **discord**."

whales, and penguins.

Today, Antarctica has more than 30 research stations, including those of Argentina, Australia, Chile, Germany, Great Britain, Italy, Japan, New Zealand, Russia, and the United States. Most scientists live and work there from October to March, when the sun shines 24 hours a day. The second half of the year brings darkness and isolation. The few scientists who remain are trapped for months with only radios, phones, and the Internet to link them to the rest of the world. After six or seven

animals without backbones

a long strip of land surrounded by water and connected to the mainland

huge (used sarcastically here to mean very small)

succession of organisms, each of which uses the next lower member of the sequence as a food source

in sequence

disagreement; conflict



months, a plane returns with supplies and releases the scientists from their **solitude**.

Scientists know that this huge, icy area holds important information about the planet. Their research has already shown that Antarctica plays a crucial role in the production of the cold deep water responsible for the circulation of water in the oceans. They also know that Antarctica holds the largest supply of fresh water on Earth. Much of their research focuses on ozone, a form of oxygen. The ozone layer protects living things from the dangerous rays of the Sun. In the mid-1980s, scientists discovered that the ozone layer above Antarctica was very thin.

movement (of something) in a circular path

Scientists have also discovered that the temperature of the air and the water in Antarctica has been slowly rising since 1970. Warmer temperatures result in less sea ice during the winter months, and this may be having an effect on the Antarctic food chain. Scientists know that the number of krill in ocean waters near the Antarctic peninsula has **declined** about 80 percent since the 1970s.

75 The most likely explanation is the decline in the amount of winter sea ice and the algae that live on it.

Humans are also affecting the food chain in Antarctica as they start **harvesting** krill in greater and greater numbers. It turns out that krill is a useful ingredient in a number of products. For example, it's used to make **cosmetics**, contact lenses, **artificial** skin, and specialized cleaning supplies. Other natural resources in Antarctica are being similarly exploited **commercially**.

**L** 

beauty preparations used often on the

Scientists will continue to study penguin and krill populations and carefully watch the ozone layer above Antarctica and the ice in the seas. If we are smart, we will protect the Antarctic environment that is so vital to our own well-being.

85

# **a** Vocabulary

|     | extremely<br>enormous<br>teeming | feat<br>peninsula<br>food chain |                  |           | unimaginable<br>approximately<br>invertebrate |
|-----|----------------------------------|---------------------------------|------------------|-----------|---|
| 1.  | People eat the                   |                                 | of animals, r    | not the l | bones.  |
| 2.  | Asia is an                       |                                 | continent, while | Austra    | lia is quite small.                           |
| 3.  | A                                | plant car                       | n grow just abou | t anyw    | here.   |
| 4.  | With temperature                 | es of $-40^{\circ}$ C, An       | tarctica is an   |           | cold  |
|     | place.                           |                                 |                  |           |   |
| 5.  | If you live on a                 |                                 | , you have w     | vater or  | three sides.                                  |
| 6.  | During the summ                  | ner, the air is                 |                  | _ with    | insects.                                      |
| 7.  | Making his or her                | r nation's Olym                 | pic team is an a | mazing    |   |
|     |                                  | for any ath                     | lete.            |           |   |
| 8.  | The way we live                  | today would ha                  | ve been          |           | 200 years                                     |
|     | ago.                             |                                 |                  |           |   |
| 9.  | Krill are an impor               | rtant part of the               | Antarctic        |           |   |
|     | krill to eat, many               | O .                             |                  |           |   |
|     | An                               |                                 |                  |           |   |
|     | An insect is an ex               | -                               |                  |           |   |
| 12. | I don't know exac                | •                               | mperature is, bu | t I thinl | k it's  |
|     |                                  | 10°C.                           |                  |           |   |
| L   |                                  |                                 |                  |           |   |
| D   | Vocabulary                       |                                 |                  |           |   |
|     | colossal                         | in turn                         | treaty           | forev     | er  |
|     | scene                            | discord                         | link             | solitu    | de  |
|     | circulate                        | decline                         | harvest          | cosm      | etics   |
| 1.  | If you need a lot of             | of                              | , you sho        | ould pro  | bably move into                               |
|     | the countryside.                 |                                 |                  |           |   |
| 2.  | The police immed                 | liately went to t               | he               |           | of the crime to                               |
|     | look for clues.                  |                                 |                  |           |   |
| 3.  | The                              | industr                         | y makes a lot of | money     | on face creams                                |
|     | and lipstick.                    |                                 |                  |           |   |

| 4   | . Allowing animals to g  | graze on the la   | nd was a                              |  |  |
|-----|--|-------------------|---------------------------------------|--|--|
|     | mistake because it kill  | led the vegetat   | ion.                                  |  |  |
| 5   | . It's important to  |                   | _ crops before wild animal eat them.  |  |  |
| 6   | . Romeo asked a questi   | on, and Juliet    | answered it.                          |  |  |
| 7   | . Doctors know that the  | ere is a          | between smoking and                   |  |  |
|     | cancer.  |                   |                                       |  |  |
| 8.  | . Nothing remains the s  | same              |                                       |  |  |
| 9.  | . Unfortunately,   |                   | between two countries can lead to     |  |  |
|     | war.   |                   |                                       |  |  |
| 10. | . It sometimes takes yea   | ars of negotiati  | on to get countries to sign a         |  |  |
|     |  |                   |                                       |  |  |
| 11. | . A  | _ in the value of | of money can make it difficult for    |  |  |
|     | people to buy things.  |                   |                                       |  |  |
| 12. | . They used a fan to   |                   | the heat around the house.            |  |  |
|     |  |                   |                                       |  |  |
|     | Vocabulary Revie   | w: Synonym:       |                                       |  |  |
| Ma  | atch the synonyms.   |                   |                                       |  |  |
|     | 1. static  | a. bold           |                                       |  |  |
|     | 2. adept   |                   |                                       |  |  |
|     | 3. daring  |                   |                                       |  |  |
|     | 4. ban   |                   |                                       |  |  |
|     | 5. achieve   | e. happen         |                                       |  |  |
|     | 6. transmit  | f. merge          |                                       |  |  |
| _   | 7. due to  | g. unchangir      | ng                                    |  |  |
| _   | 8. take place  | h. crime          |                                       |  |  |
|     |  | i. because of     | •                                     |  |  |
|     |  | j. good at        |                                       |  |  |
| 057 |  |                   |                                       |  |  |
| C   | Comprehension C  | heck: True/Fa     | llse/Not Enough Information           |  |  |
|     | 1. It's colder in the  | A natia than in   | Antonatica                            |  |  |
|     | 1. It's colder in the Arctic than in Antarctica 2. Flesh freezes at -89.2°C. |                   |                                       |  |  |
|     |  |                   | vater in Antarctica, it is a very dry |  |  |
| -   | place.   | ere is a for of w | ater in Amarcica, it is a very dry    |  |  |
|     | place.   |                   | 12                                    |  |  |

| 4.  | Many different kinds of invertebrates live in Antarctica.           |
|---|---|
| 5.  | A midge is a kind of invertebrate.                                  |
| 6.  | Algae feed on krill.  |
| 7.  | Penguins feed on krill.   |
| 8.  | No one stays in Antarctica year-round.                              |
| 9.  | The air temperature in Antarctica is going up.                      |
| 10.                                       | There are more krill in the water surrounding Antarctica than there |
|   | used to be.   |
| 7. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. |   |



#### Comprehension Questions

- 1. What are three things that make Antarctica unique?
- 2. What kinds of living things survive in and around Antarctica?
- 3. What is the food chain in the water surrounding Antarctica?
- 4. What is the purpose of the Antarctic Treaty?
- 5. How would you describe a scientist's life in Antarctica in the winter?
- 6. What effect does the cold deep water around Antarctica have on other oceans?
- 7. What effects are the rising air and water temperatures having on the food chain in Antarctica?
- 8. What can krill be used for?



### Reading Strategy: Using Context Clues

Many words in English have more than one meaning. As you read, it's important to use context clues (the surrounding words and ideas) to guess the correct meaning of words.

Read the definitions of each word below. Then use context clues to guess the meaning of the word in each context. Write the letter of the definition.

#### bold

| <ul> <li>a daring; courageous</li> <li>b impolite; too direct</li> <li>c distinct; clear</li> </ul> |
|---|
| 1. They chose a <b>bold</b> design for the building because they wanted it                          |
| to stand out.   |
| 2. It takes a <b>bold</b> person to sail alone around the world.                                    |
| 3. Entering without knocking was a <b>bold</b> thing for him to do.                                 |

| moved   |
|---|
| a changed the position of   |
| <b>b</b> sold   |
| c affected emotionally  |
| 4. The story she told <b>moved</b> everyone in the room.  |
| 5. When the store reduced its prices, everything <b>moved</b> quickly.                                |
| 6. They <b>moved</b> all the furniture out of the room before painting it.                            |
| static  |
| a adjective not moving; not changing  |
| <b>b</b> <i>noun</i> crackling noise on the radio or TV caused by electrical problems or interference |
| 7. We couldn't hear his voice above the <b>static</b> .   |
| 8. The number of animals in the area has remained <b>static</b> .                                     |
| extreme   |
| a farthest away   |
| <b>b</b> radical; very different from what most people think  |
| c very great  |
| 9. They live at the <b>extreme</b> end of the road.   |
| 10. Choosing to live in a cave is a pretty <b>extreme</b> idea.                                       |
| 11. The publisher put <b>extreme</b> pressure on the writer to finish the                             |
| book quickly.   |



# Vocabulary Expansion: Word Forms

Choose the right word form for each sentence below.

|    | Verb      | Noun          | Adjective      | Adverb         |
|----|-----------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. | imagine   | imagination   | (un)imaginable | (un)imaginably |
| 2. | circulate | circulation   | circulatory    | circularly     |
| 3. |           | extreme       | extreme        | extremely      |
| 4. | link      | link, linkage |                |                |
| 5. |           | artifice      | artificial     | artificially   |
| 6. | erode     | erosion       |                |                |

| 1. If you can yourself living thousands of years ago, then you m                | us   |
|---|------|
| have a good   |      |
| 2. Your blood inside your body. If you have cold feet                           |      |
| and hands, you might have bad   |      |
| 3. Antarctica is at one of planet Earth, while the Arctic                       | c is |
| at the other.   |      |
| 4. Is there any between the decreasing amount of sea                            | ice  |
| and the decreasing number of krill?   |      |
| 5. Today, you can participate in sports even if you have an                     | 4    |
| knee or hip.  |      |
| 6. Too much rain can cause serious problems with                                |      |
|   |      |
| Grammar Review: Articles  |      |
| Put an article in each blank if one is necessary.                               |      |
|   |      |
| Despite (1) enormous size of (2) continent, only a few                          |      |
| invertebrates can survive on (3) Antarctic peninsula, and even they             | ,    |
| are (4) rare. The largest of this group is (5) type of midge,                   |      |
| which grows to the colossal size of 12 millimeters. (6) only plant              |      |
| life that can survive in this harsh climate consists mainly of (7)              |      |
| algae, moss, and lichen.  |      |
| While (8) surface of Antarctica is inhospitable to most living                  |      |
| things, the water surrounding (9) continent is teeming with (10)                |      |
| living creatures. At the bottom of the food chain in Antarctic waters           | 3    |
| is (11) hardy type of algae. During the winter, (12) algae                      |      |
| live between the layers of snow on the sea ice, but when (13) ice               |      |
| breaks open in the spring, the algae pour into the ocean. Huge numbers of       |      |
| krill, tiny sea animals that are less than eight centimeters long, feed on (14) |      |
| algae. The krill, in turn, are (15) vital source of food for                    |      |
| seabirds, fish, seals, whales, and penguins.                                    |      |
|   |      |



### Sentence Combining

Read the examples and the model combinations below. Then rewrite sentences 1 to 4 following the models.

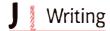
*Example:* Antarctica is a desert. Deserts receive less than 250 millimeters of rain a year.

Models:

- a. Antarctica is a desert because it receives less than 250 millimeters of rain a year.
- b. Like other deserts, Antarctica receives less than 250 millimeters of rain a year.
- c. Because Antarctica receives less than 250 millimeters of rain a year, it is considered to be a desert.

| 1. The midge is an invertebrate. An invertebrate does not have a backle |         |  |  |
|---|---------|--|--|
|   |         |  |  |
|   |         |  |  |
| 2.  | Krill a | re a vital source of food. Penguins and other animals could not e without them.  |  |
|   | a       |  |  |
|   |         |  |  |
|   |         |  |  |
| Ex  | ample:  | Scientists say that the temperature of the air has been increasing. It has been increasing since 1970.   |  |
| Mo  | odels:  | <ul><li>a. Scientists say that since 1970 the temperature of the air has been increasing.</li><li>b. According to scientists, the temperature of the air has been increasing since 1970.</li><li>c. The temperature of the air has been increasing since 1970, say scientists.</li></ul> |  |
|   |         | sts say that the number of krill has been declining. This has been ning since the 1970s.   |  |
|   | b       |  |  |

| Scientists say that it's very lonely in Antarctica. It's especially lonely in the |
|---|
| winter.   |
| a   |
| b   |
| C   |
|   |



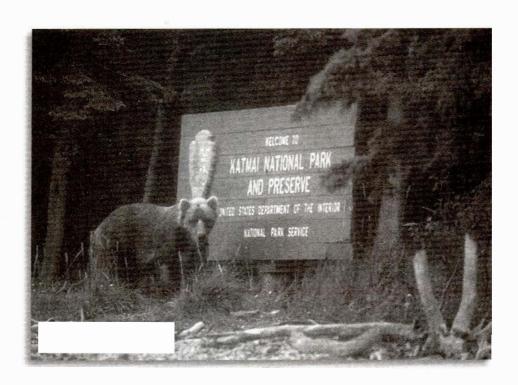
What kinds of plants or crops grow in your native country? What kinds of climates do they grow in? What do people use them for? Make a chart about these plants or crops, and then share it with your classmates.

| Name of plant or crop | Climate it's grown in | What it's used for |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
|                       |                       |                    |
|                       |                       |                    |
|                       |                       |                    |
|                       |                       |                    |
|                       |                       |                    |
|                       |                       |                    |
|                       |                       |                    |
|                       |                       |                    |
|                       |                       |                    |

# **National Parks**

lesson





## **Before You Read**

- 1. Describe a national park you've visited or heard about.
- 2. What is the purpose of national parks?
- 3. Do you think it's important to have national parks? Why or why not?

### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. One goal of the park system was to preserve and protect unique natural landscapes and wildlife **habitats**.
- 2. With no one **assigned** to protect the area, vandalism by **curious** visitors became a problem.
- 3. During the summer, the most popular parks are **crowded** and noisy.
- 4. These parks contain the most **massive** trees on Earth and the tallest mountain in the continental United States.

# 4 National Parks



For centuries, Native Americans living in what is now the United States and Canada lived close to nature, using only what they needed from the natural environment in order to survive. But when Europeans arrived on the

- of materials that they could use and sell. They cut down the forests, killed animals for sport, and used farming methods that allowed the wind and rain to erode the soil. To many of the new settlers, it must have seemed that there was an endless supply of forests, animals, and land.
  - By the 1870s, settlers were moving west in astonishing numbers. It was at this time that a small group of people became concerned about protecting the magnificent scenery and abundant wildlife in an area
- 15 that is now part of the states of Wyoming, Montana, and Idaho. This part of the country had geysers, hot springs, and waterfalls; there were also snow-covered mountains, clear lakes, and huge trees. The group of concerned citizens worried that unless these natural
- 20 wonders were protected by the government, their

great supply (of something)



descendants would never have a chance to see them. In 1872, they convinced the U.S. government to make the area into a national park. Called Yellowstone National Park, it was the country's first national park.

persuaded

When Yellowstone National Park was created, no 25 one gave much thought to how the park would be managed, who would actually protect it, and where the money to take care of it would come from. In fact, during the park's first few years, no money at all was 30 provided to take care of it. And with no one assigned to protect the area, vandalism by curious visitors and the killing of wildlife within the park's boundary became serious problems. Finally, in 1883, the government asked the U.S. Army to protect the park, and for the 35 next 30 years, it remained under the army's control. In the final years of the 19th century, more national parks were established, hunting was banned in the parks, and a few roads were built through the parks.

Realizing that the national parks needed to be 40 managed and protected, the U.S. government created the National Park System in 1912. The goal of the park system was to create and manage parks that would preserve and protect unique natural landscapes, wildlife habitats, and sites of historic or 45 cultural significance.

Today, the U.S. National Park System is made up of 375 parks, covering more than 300,000 square kilometers of land. The parks can be used for camping, hiking, fishing and boating. Scientists, naturalists, and 50 historians provide information, give talks, and lead guided walks. Unfortunately, the immense popularity of the parks could well be their <u>undoing</u>. During the summer, the most popular parks are crowded and noisy. The greatest danger to the national parks, 55 however, comes from the areas surrounding them. The parks are threatened by pollution from power plants, diversion of water for development, and urban

development. Today, all of the 375 national parks are being degraded because of overuse and damage to their downfall; destruction

related to a city

ecological units in nature



60 ecosystems.

Below is a list of some of the most threatened national parks.

#### Acadia National Park, Maine

With more than 180 square kilometers of rugged
Atlantic **shoreline**, 26 mountain peaks, mixed forest,
lakes, islands, and abundant wildlife, Acadia is plagued
by ozone pollution, degraded scenic vistas, acid **deposition**, and mercury deposition.

coastline

laying down through natural processes; noun form of deposit

#### Everglades National Park, Florida

70 Everglades is North America's only subtropical preserve and the only place on Earth where alligators and crocodiles coexist. Sadly, southern Florida registers the highest mercury deposition levels anywhere in America.

#### 75 Glacier National Park, Montana

Glacier boasts more than 1,000 kilometers of trails and hundreds of structures listed on the National Register of Historic Places. The park's temperature has risen **dramatically** in the past century and its glaciers have **retreated**—developments that scientists attribute in part to global warming.

#### Great Smoky Mountains National Park, North Carolina and Tennessee

The world's salamander capital is the nation's most visited national park. It is also one of the country's haziest parks. Ozone levels here are harmful both to plants and to people.

### Mammoth Cave National Park, Kentucky

Containing the most extensive known cave system in the world, Mammoth Cave also boasts one of the most biologically diverse rivers in North America. This is another one of the country's haziest, most ozonepolluted parks. Mercury threatens seven endangered species here.

#### 95 Sequoia and Kings Canyon National Parks, California

These parks contain the most **massive** trees on Earth and the tallest mountain in the continental United States. However, **pesticides** may be linked to a decline in wildlife in the parks, and the parks' plants are being damaged by ozone.

chemicals used to kill pests

#### Shenandoah National Park, Virginia

Shenandoah represents one of America's most diverse botanical reserves and **hosts** approximately 1,400 known plant species. Acid rain pollutes park streams and has reduced the acid-neutralizing <u>capacity</u> of <u>sensitive</u> watersheds.

ability to hold or store easily damaged

convince

From http://www.npca.org/across\_the\_nation/visitor\_experience/code\_red/fact\_sheets/default.asp. Adapted with permission from the National Parks Conservation Association.

magnificent

# **a** Vocabulary

abundance

|    | assigned undoing      |                  | habitats<br>urban      |                        |
|----|-----------------------|------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. | It takes the best ma  | terials and a lo | t of work to build a   |                        |
|    |                       | _ house.         |                        |                        |
| 2. | It's difficult to mov | e in a           | room.                  |                        |
| 3. | Urban developmen      | it is destroying | the                    | of many kinds          |
|    | of animals.           |                  |                        |                        |
| 4. | There is an           | 0                | f krill in the water a | round Antarctica.      |
| 5. | Only                  | of the c         | ountry can vote in a   | an election.           |
| 6. | If the plants in an _ |                  | die, this will a       | ffect the other living |
|    | things there.         |                  |                        |                        |
| 7. | Everyone has an _     |                  | seat on an airpl       | ane.                   |
| 8. | Allowing animals t    | o graze was the  | e land's               | Before                 |
|    | long, nothing could   | l grow there.    |                        |                        |
| 9. | If you are            | abo              | out ecosystems, you    | should try to learn    |
|    | more about them.      |                  |                        |                        |

citizens

| 10.  | ). It doesn't make sense to own a car if you live in an |                   |      |                  |                          |  |
|------|---|-------------------|------|------------------|--------------------------|--|
|      | area.   |                   |      |                  |                          |  |
| 11.  | Many  | are               | op   | posed to drillir | ng in wildlife areas.    |  |
| 12.  | She had to  |                   | _ th | e group that h   | er plan was the best one |  |
| b    | Vocabulary  |                   |      |                  |                          |  |
|      | shoreline   | _                 |      | •                |                          |  |
|      | hazy  |                   |      |                  | capacity                 |  |
|      | sensitive   |                   |      | urban            | retreated                |  |
| 1.   | They tried to pro                                       | tect the most_    |      |                  | _ areas in the state by  |  |
|      | banning motoriz   | ed vehicles.      |      |                  |                          |  |
| 2.   | On a  | day,              | it's | difficult to see | the mountains in the     |  |
|      | distance.   |                   |      |                  |                          |  |
| 3.   | If you dig down into the earth, you will find mineral   |                   |      |                  |                          |  |
| 4.   | . As the of the party, he made sure that all his guests |                   |      |                  | sure that all his guests |  |
|      | had enough to ea  | t and drink.      |      |                  |                          |  |
| 5.   | You can often find shells and seaweed on the            |                   |      |                  |                          |  |
| 6.   | The thermometer an unimaginable $-50^{\circ}$ F.        |                   |      |                  |                          |  |
| 7.   | A temperature in  | crease of 30°F    | in c | one hour is a _  |                          |  |
|      | change.   |                   |      |                  |                          |  |
| 8.   | My car has a  |                   |      | of just four peo | pple.                    |  |
| 9.   | The pyramids are  |                   |      | structures       |                          |  |
| 10.  | Many are dangerous to humans.                           |                   |      |                  |                          |  |
| 11.  | The wolves  |                   | w    | hen they saw     | the campfire.            |  |
|      | Vocabulary R  | eview: Odd        | One  | e Out            |                          |  |
| Circ | cle the word that do                                    | esn't fit in each | groi | ıp.              |                          |  |
|      | lisaster, catastropl<br>nfertile, degraded              |                   |      | -                |                          |  |

# 3. preserve, appoint, protect, save4. cheat, murder, exploit, ponder

5. reliable, cooperative, foolhardy, responsible

6. designate, carve, decorate, weave

- 7. budget, referee, judge, witness
- 8. arrogant, abusive, respected, combative



# Comprehension Check: Multiple Choice

Circle the letter of the best answer.

| 1. | Unlike Native Americans, many of the new settlers to North America  |
|----|---|
|    | <ul><li>a. tried to set up national parks</li><li>b. used the land wisely</li><li>c. cut down the forests</li></ul>                       |
| 2. | The first national park in the United States  a. had geysers and hot springs  b. became a park in the 18th century  c. was in California  |
| 3. | The first national park  a. didn't have any visitors  b. wasn't protected  c. wasn't vandalized   |
| 4. | The government asked to protect the park.  a. a group of citizens  b. curious visitors  c. the U.S. Army                                  |
| 5. | The National Park System protects  a. only natural areas  b. more than just natural areas  c. hunters                                     |
| 6. | is banned in some parks. a. Hunting b. Fishing c. Camping   |
|    | Many of the national parks are being degraded in part because ofa. the abundance of wildlife b. the lack of visitors c. urban development |

Instagram:@IELTS\_Matters

- 8. Sequoia and Kings Canyon National Parks are famous for \_\_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. their enormous trees
  - b. their cave system
  - c. their glaciers



#### Comprehension Questions

- 1. How did the European settlers and the Native Americans use the land differently?
- 2. Where is Yellowstone National Park?
- 3. Who was responsible for creating Yellowstone National Park?
- 4. What problems did Yellowstone National Park have in its early years?
- 5. What is the purpose of the National Park System?
- 6. How are national parks being threatened today?
- 7. What types of pollution are affecting the parks?
- 8. Which of the parks listed on pages 136–137 sounds the most interesting to you? Why?



## Reading Strategy: Identifying Facts and Opinions

| line. | now as a fact or an opinion. Write <b>Fact</b> or <b>Opinion</b> on the |
|-------|---|
| 1     | To the early settlers in North America, it must have                    |
|       | seemed that there was an endless supply of forests.                     |
| 2.    | Yellowstone National Park has magnificent scenery.                      |
| 3.    | Yellowstone National Park was the country's first                       |
|       | national park.  |
| 4.    | Unfortunately, the immense popularity of national                       |
|       | parks could well be their undoing.                                      |
| 5.    | It is sad that mercury levels are high in southern                      |
|       | Florida.  |
| 6.    | There are more than 1,000 trails in Glacier National                    |
|       | Park.   |
| 7.    | The most massive tree on Earth is in California.                        |
| 8.    | Pesticides may be linked to a decline in wildlife.                      |



# Vocabulary Expansion: Word Forms

Look at the chart below and circle the suffix that was added to form each noun. Choose the correct form of the word to complete each question, and then answer the questions.

| Verb |           | Noun          |  |
|------|-----------|---------------|--|
| 1.   | assign    | assignment    |  |
| 2.   | manage    | management    |  |
| 3.   | establish | establishment |  |
| 4.   | protect   | protection    |  |
| 5.   | create    | creation      |  |
| 6.   | astonish  | astonishment  |  |
| 7.   | arrive    | arrival       |  |
| 8.   | inform    | information   |  |
| 9.   | pollute   | pollution     |  |
| 10.  | divert    | diversion     |  |

| 1.  | Do you think teachers should            | homework over the            |
|-----|---|------------------------------|
|     | weekend?                                |                              |
| 2.  | Would you want to be in charge of the _ | of a large                   |
|     | company?                                |                              |
| 3.  | Do you think that the                   | of nationals parks is a good |
|     | idea?                                   |                              |
| 4.  | What would happen to the parks if they  | didn't have                  |
| 5.  | Do you think that the                   | of international parks is a  |
|     | good idea?                              | *                            |
| 6.  | How does a person's face show           | ?                            |
| 7.  | Do you think the time will              | when the national parks      |
|     | are too polluted to use?                |                              |
| 8.  | What is a good source of                | about air pollution?         |
| 9.  | Is it against the law to                | the air and water?           |
| 10. | How can the of wa                       | ter endanger the land?       |



# Grammar Review: Transition Words

| Use the c  | orrect trans | cition word to complete                    | each sentence below.                                       |      |
|------------|--------------|--|--|------|
| how        | ever         | for example                                | finally  |      |
| 1. Ever    | y year, tho  | usands of tourists vi                      | isit the area to see the magnificent                       |      |
| scen       | ery          | , it's u                                   | sually so hazy that they can't see                         |      |
|            | hing in the  |  |  |      |
| 2. They    | worked f     | or years to convince                       | the government to turn the area in                         | to a |
| park       |              | , in 1872,                                 | they got their wish.                                       |      |
| 3. Man     | y of the na  | tional parks are plag                      | gued by ozone pollution.                                   |      |
|            |              | , Mammoth Ca                               | ave National Park has an extremely                         |      |
| high       | level of oz  | cone.                                      |  |      |
| 4. Acad    | lia Nationa  | al Park has a beautif                      | ul shoreline and abundant wildlife.                        |      |
|            |              | , in the summe                             | r, air pollution is a serious problem                      | ι.   |
| 5. Some    | e of the na  | tional parks include                       | sites of historic importance.                              |      |
|            |              | , a site of an im                          | nportant Civil War battle is part of o                     | ne   |
| natio      | nal park.    |  |  |      |
|            |              |  |  |      |
| Se         | ntence C     | ombining                                   |  |      |
| Read the e | example and  | d the model combination                    | ns below. Then rewrite sentences 1 and                     | d 2  |
|            | the models.  |  |  |      |
| Example:   |              | government realized                        | d that the parks needed protection.<br>tional Park System. | For  |
| Models:    |              | se the parks needed<br>d the National Park | protection, the U.S. government                            |      |
|            |              |  | eeded protection, the U.S. governme                        | ent  |
|            |              | d the National Park                        | •  |      |
|            |              |  | t realized that the parks needed                           |      |
|            | •            |  | ational Park System.                                       |      |
|            | _            |  | e park was being vandalized. For the                       | nis  |
|            |              | he U.S. Army to pro                        | _  |      |
|            |              |  |  |      |
|            |              |  |  |      |
| C          |              |  |  |      |



| 2. | The citizens feared that the magnificent scenery would be destroyed. To   |
|----|---|
|    | stop this from happening, they asked the government to turn the area into |
|    | a national park.  |
|    | a   |
|    | b   |
|    | c.  |
|    |   |



# Writing

Imagine that you are visiting a national park. Write a short note describing what you see and hear. Include both facts and opinions in your description.

# Video Highlights



### Before You Watch

- 1. Think back to what you've read about U.S. national parks, and answer the questions.
  - a. Why were national parks formed?
  - b. What threatened Yellowstone National Park when it was first designated a national park?
  - c. What is the goal of the National Park Service?
  - d. What is threatening the parks now?
- 2. Read the following quote from the video. Guess the meaning of the underlined words.
  - "A conservation group says many of those parks continue to be in <u>jeopardy</u> from everyday threats."
- 3. You are going to watch a video about other national parks. Discuss in pairs what you think you will see, using some of the following words:

| vegetation  | secluded | preserve   | lush      |
|-------------|----------|------------|-----------|
| wilderness  | eroded   | protection | pollution |
| magnificent | habitats | urban      | threats   |
| shoreline   | massive  |            |           |



### As You Watch

- 1. Watch the video. What is the bad news about U.S. national parks? What is the good news?
- 2. Match each national park with the threat it faces.
  - a. Florida's Biscayne National Park
    b. Great Smoky Mountains National Park
    c. The Underground Railroad network
    development
    under-funding
    air pollution



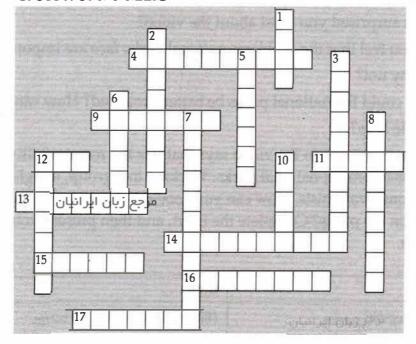
# After You Watch

- 1. Form groups to answer the following questions.
  - a. Which national park would you most like to visit? Why?
  - b. What surprised you most about the video?
  - c. Do you feel that the problems national parks face are important? Why or why not?
  - d. How could the national parks be better protected? How can ordinary people help?
- 2. The conservationist in the video says that it is the responsibility of the U.S. Congress to protect national parks. Working in a group, imagine that you are all conservationists. How can you convince Congress to spend more money on the parks? Complete the chart, and then present your ideas to the class.

| If                        | then                          |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| If we clean up the parks, | then more tourists will come. |
|                           |                               |
|                           |                               |
|                           |                               |
|                           | 71                            |
|                           |                               |
| X.                        |                               |
|                           |                               |
|                           |                               |

# **Activity Page**

### **Crossword Puzzle**



### Across

- 4. Companies are harvesting krill in Antarctica for \_\_\_\_\_ uses.
- 9. Animals are in danger of becoming extinct when their natural \_\_\_\_\_\_ is destroyed.
- 11. setting, where something happens
- 12. Many cities in the United States have passed legislation to \_\_\_\_\_ smoking in public places.
- 13. This bus is too \_\_\_\_\_. Let's wait for the next one.
- 14. an unexplored area
- 15. Hawaii has more \_\_\_\_\_diversity than any other state in the United States because people from many countries settled there.
- 16. huge, massive
- 17. \_\_\_\_\_ is one natural cause of desertification.

### Down

- 1. Running a marathon is an amazing \_\_\_\_\_ of endurance.
- 2. Many \_\_\_\_\_ visit Florence every year to see the museums and architecture.
- 3. Chemical \_\_\_\_\_ get rid of insects but can be harmful to crops.
- 5. Someone who asks a lot of questions is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6. Kelly is a \_\_\_\_\_ of California. She was born in Orange County.
- 7. grand, majestic
- 8. land that has water on three sides
- Disadvantages to living in \_\_\_\_\_\_ areas include traffic and pollution.
- 12. Poor time management skills can be a \_\_\_\_\_\_to completing work on time.

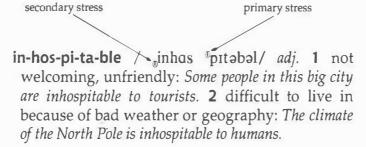
146



# **Dictionary Page**

### **Learning About Word Stress**

Your dictionary includes information on which syllables in a word are stressed, or spoken with force or emphasis. The *primary stress* indicates the syllable that should receive the heaviest stress. Some words have a *secondary stress*, which indicates the syllable that should receive the next heaviest stress.



1. Look at the words below. Double underline the primary stress. Underline the secondary stress.

Example: inhospitable

| uninhabitable | lush       |
|---------------|------------|
| artificial    | barren     |
| vulnerable    | static     |
| hazy          | commercial |
| colossal      | ahundant   |

2. Write each of the above words in the proper column of the chart below, depending on whether its meaning is generally positive or negative or can be either.

### ADJECTIVES DESCRIBING PLACES

| Positive | Can be positive or negative | Negative |
|----------|-----------------------------|----------|
| lush     |                             | barren   |
|          |                             |          |



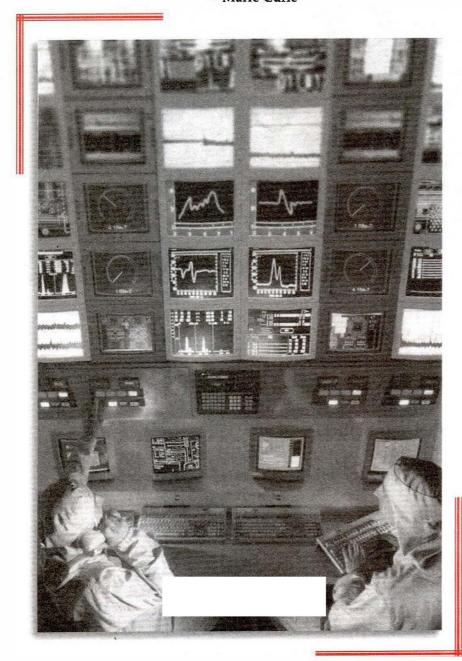
# Science and Technology

unit

4

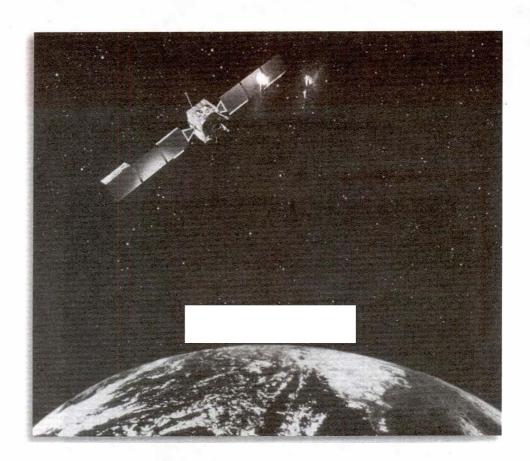
I was taught that the way of [scientific] progress is neither swift nor easy.

—Marie Curie



# **Satellites**

# lesson



# Before You Read

- 1. What is the definition of a satellite?
- 2. What are satellites used for?
- 3. Which country put the first satellite in space?



### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. Satellites are bodies that travel around a planet. Our Moon is a satellite because it **orbits** the Earth.
- 2. Some satellites orbit at very high **altitudes** of more than 32,000 kilometers from Earth.
- 3. Weather satellites have to travel very fast to prevent **gravity** from pulling them back to Earth.
- 4. Communication satellites have a **lifespan** of 12 to 13 years.
- 5. Computers on ships and planes can use satellites to **calculate** their position.



# **Satellites**



In astronomy, satellites are defined as bodies that travel around a planet. Our Moon is a satellite because it orbits the Earth. In addition to these natural satellites, there are many human-made satellites revolving

5 around the Earth and other planets in our solar system. Some of these satellites orbit at very high altitudes of more than 32,000 kilometers from Earth, while others stay close to Earth at altitudes of about 250 kilometers. Each human-made satellite sent into space has a special mission, or purpose, based on the kind of satellite it is. The six major kinds of human-made satellites in space are weather satellites, scientific research satellites, Earth observation satellites, communication satellites, navigation satellites, and military satellites.

navigation satellites, and military satellites.

Weather satellites help scientists monitor the weather patterns on Earth. Information from weather satellites is invaluable for making weather forecasts and warning of potentially dangerous weather conditions such as hurricanes and tornadoes. Weather satellites travel in what is called low earth orbit (LEO). That means they travel between 320 and 800 kilometers above the Earth. A satellite at this altitude can get detailed pictures of our planet, but it has to travel very fast to prevent gravity from pulling it back to Earth. Some of these satellites

Scientific research satellites travel in space collecting information and conducting experiments to help us better understand the solar system. For example, a satellite called *SOHO* is studying the atmosphere, surface, and internal activity of the Sun. Satellites can serve as unique research laboratories. For example, it's possible to grow high-quality human protein crystals and **tissue** cultures inside a space station because gravity is so low (almost zero). Without the pressure of gravity, the crystals can grow equally in all directions.

25 travel as fast as 27,000 kilometers per hour, orbiting the

Earth in just 90 minutes.

the science of outer space

distances above sea level

directional guidance for ships and airplanes armed forces observe over time extremely valuable possibly



**Deciphering** the protein **codes** of these crystals may help in the development of new medicines to combat diabetes, cancer, and other diseases. The tissue cultures 40 may also be used to test new cancer treatments.

Earth observation satellites are used to observe rain forests, water supplies, and other natural resources and to monitor environmental problems such as pollution and deforestation. These satellites are important 45 because they can help control the spread of disease in crops and forests. They can also <u>detect</u> fires and floods before they become too big.

We use communication satellites for voice, data, and television communications around the world. These 50 satellites serve as relay stations, receiving information from one place and sending it on to another place. Most communication satellites stay at a high altitude of about 35,000 kilometers above the Earth. Because of their speed and the size of their orbit, these satellites revolve 55 around in 24 hours. Because the rate at which they travel is the same as the rate of rotation of the Earth, the satellites remain over the same place on the Earth's surface. This area on Earth is called the satellite's footprint. If a satellite's footprint covered Africa, for 60 example, a person would use this satellite when communicating with other people in Africa. When someone in Africa wanted to communicate with

65 roughly 100 communication satellites orbiting the Earth, each with a lifespan of 12 to 13 years. At any one time, a large communication satellite can carry more than 100,000 telephone calls and several television signals. Navigation satellites help guide ships at sea and 70 airplanes in the sky. Computers on the ships and planes

someone in a different footprint, the message would be relayed using more than one satellite. Today, there are

can calculate their position using the information they receive from satellites. Many cars in the 21st century have a global position system, or GPS. A GPS is so versatile it can navigate a car around a city block or 75 across an entire country.

figuring out the meaning of; interpreting

find; discover

detailed bits of information

turning on an axis or around a center

capable of doing many things



Military satellites are weather, communication, and observation satellites used for military purposes. Some military satellites are called "spy satellites" because they monitor the activities of other countries and send the information back to their ground stations. These satellites can take extraordinarily detailed pictures of things on the ground, which makes them a powerful tool for the military. For example, they can provide information on the position of ships and aircraft as well as the movement of troops on the ground. Military satellites are also used to ensure safe communications between ships, aircraft, and ground stations. In addition to taking photographs, military satellites have also been used in modern warfare to direct missiles and destroy specific targets.

Satellites are able to stay up in space because they move fast and because the Earth's gravity keeps them there. Imagine tying an object to the end of a long string and spinning it around in the air. The object will remain

in motion as long as it is moving fast and the string remains connected. If you stop or cut the string, the object will fall. This is how satellites work. Sometimes they have problems and need to be repaired. While this can usually be done from Earth by computers, it may be necessary for people to go into space to repair them. If they cannot be repaired, they are simply disabled and left to float in space forever. This is what is called "space junk."

It was roughly 50 years ago that the former Soviet
Union sent the first human-made satellite into orbit. The football-sized satellite was **appropriately** named
Sputnik, which means "satellite" in Russian. Sputnik 2
went up one month later carrying a dog named Laika, the first animal to go into space. Since that time,
hundreds of satellites have been sent into orbit around the Earth and other planets in the solar system with the goal of collecting valuable information for people on Earth.

moving

fixed

made unable to function

suitably; properly; correctly





# Vocabulary

|          | astronomy             |                       | revolve                 |                    |
|----------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|--------------------|
|          | navigation            | military              | monitor                 | invaluable         |
|          | potential             | gravity               | decipher                | code               |
| 1.       | How many moons        |                       | the planet Jupite:      | r?                 |
| 2.       | In the past, ships u  | ised the stars for_   |                         |                    |
| 3.       | Without               | , we wo               | ouldn't be able to stay | y on the ground.   |
| 4.       | The study of object   | ts in space is called | l                       | -30                |
| 5.       | How long does it t    | ake for the Earth t   | 0                       | _ around the       |
|          | Sun?                  |                       |                         |                    |
| 6.       | When the two cour     | ntries couldn't neg   | otiate a treaty, the    |                    |
|          |                       | took over.            |                         |                    |
| 7.       | The message was v     | written in            | , and no                | one could          |
|          |                       | it.                   |                         |                    |
| 8.       | I can think of two    |                       | reasons why the s       | atellite isn't     |
|          | working.              |                       |                         |                    |
| 9.       | At what               | do peo                | ple start having troul  | ble breathing?     |
| 10.      | They wouldn't sell    | the tapestry for an   | ny amount of money;     | it's               |
|          |                       |                       |                         |                    |
| 11.      | It's the responsibili | ty of parents to      | th                      | eir children's     |
|          | activities.           |                       |                         |                    |
|          | *                     |                       |                         |                    |
|          | Vocabulary            |                       |                         |                    |
| THE SHOP | datata                | 4-4-                  | wo be be                | 1:600000           |
|          | detects calculate     | versatile             | rotate<br>in motion     | lifespan<br>repair |
|          | disabled              | code                  | appropriate             | tissue             |
| 1        |                       |                       | in a computer.          | 20040              |
|          | What's the average    |                       | •                       |                    |
|          | 0                     |                       | gs that are standing s  | etill than of      |
| ٥.       | -                     | •                     | go mar are standing s   | oun man or         |
| 1        | things that are       |                       | maka hafara a fira ass  | n hasama lawas     |
| 4.       | A SHOKE alarm         | S                     | moke before a fire car  | n become large.    |



| 5. If you want to give th | nem a gift, some fl | owers would be                |
|---------------------------|---------------------|-------------------------------|
| 6. The alarm wouldn't s   |                     | e finally it.                 |
|                           |                     | their own cars, but now they  |
| pay to have them fixe     |                     | ,                             |
| 1 ,                       |                     | an play many different roles. |
| 9. How long does it take  |                     |                               |
|                           |                     | the area of a triangle?       |
| •                         |                     | are used in research to find  |
| treatments for many t     |                     |                               |
|                           | <i>J</i> 1          |                               |
| Vocabulary Revie          | ew: Antonyms        |                               |
|                           |                     |                               |
| Match the antonyms.       |                     |                               |
| 1. imperative             | a. slow down        |                               |
| 2. succeed                | b. clear            |                               |
| 3. accelerate             | c. hardy            |                               |
| 4. crowded                | d. unnecessary      |                               |
| 5. barren                 | e. in motion        |                               |
| 6. hazy                   | f. fertile          |                               |
| 7. massive                | g. harvest          |                               |
| 8. sensitive              | h. natural          |                               |
| 9. artificial             | i. repair           |                               |
| 10. static                | j. fail             |                               |
|                           | k. small            |                               |
| *                         | l. empty            |                               |
|                           | • •                 |                               |

# Comprehension Check: True/False/Not Enough Information 1. All satellites orbit the Earth. 2. Weather satellites travel at a lower altitude than communication satellites do. 3. Weather satellites travel very fast. 4. The rate at which weather satellites orbit the Earth is the same as the rate at which the Earth rotates. 5. The satellite SOHO orbits the Earth. 6. The lack of gravity in a satellite makes it difficult to do research. 7. Observation satellites can help prevent large fires. 8. There is one primary communication satellite in orbit around the Earth. 9. Military satellites can take detailed photographs.

# **e** Comprehension Questions

- 1. What is the definition of a satellite?
- 2. What are the six main types of satellites?
- 3. Why do you think weather satellites travel in low earth orbit?
- 4. Why do weather satellites have to travel very fast?

\_\_\_\_\_10. Useless satellites are usually destroyed.

- 5. What is the mission of the satellite SOHO?
- 6. Why are scientists using a space station to grow protein crystals and tissue cultures?
- 7. What is a satellite's footprint?
- 8. What are three facts about communication satellites?
- 9. What are two important missions of military satellites?
- 10. What is "space junk"?





# Reading Strategy: Main Ideas and Details

In the chart below, identify the main idea in each paragraph. Then summarize the most important details in your own words.

| Paragraph         | Main idea  | Important details   |
|-------------------|--|---|
| 1 (lines 1–14)    | Satellites are<br>bodies that orbit<br>a planet. | Some are natural, and some are human-made. They travel at different altitudes. There are six main kinds: weather, research, Earth observation, communication, navigation, and military. |
| 2 (lines 15–26)   |  |   |
| 3 (lines 27–40)   |  |   |
| 4 (lines 41–47)   |  |   |
| 5 (lines 48–68)   |  |   |
| 6 (lines 69–75)   |  |   |
| 7 (lines 76–90)   |  |   |
| 8 (lines 91–103)  |  |   |
| 9 (lines 104–113) |  |   |



# Vocabulary Expansion: Word Forms

Choose the right word form for each sentence below.

|    | Verb        | Noun                               | Adjective     | Adverb         |
|----|-------------|------------------------------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. |             | astronomy<br>astronomer            | astronomical  | astronomically |
| 2. | rotate      | rotation                           |               |                |
| 3. | calculate   | calculations                       |               |                |
| 4. | disable     | disability                         | disabled      |                |
| 5. | communicate | communication communicator         | communicative |                |
| 6. | detect      | detection<br>detector<br>detective |               |                |
| 7. | orbit       | orbit                              | orbital       |                |
| 8. | navigate    | navigation<br>navigator            |               |                |

| 1. | The government is spending less money on research    |
|----|--|
|    | these days. That's why there are now more unemployed |
|    |  |
| 2. | The Earth on its axis. It makes one full             |
|    | in 24 hours.   |
| 3. | What instruments do astronomers use to the distance  |
|    | to faraway stars?                                    |
| 4. | He was injured at work. Because of his, he gets a    |
|    | check every month.                                   |
| 5. | Some people are more than others.                    |
| 5. | Dogs can many smells that humans are not aware of.   |
| 7. | There is a lot of space junk in around Earth.        |
| 3. | Could you a boat across the ocean without special    |
|    | equipment designed for?                              |



# Grammar Review: Active and Passive Verbs

Rewrite each sentence below by changing the active verbs to passive verbs and the passive verbs to active verbs.

*Example:* Earth observation satellites are used to observe the Earth's rain forests.

We use Earth observation satellites to observe the Earth's rain forests.

- 1. Weather satellites warn 159us of potentially dangerous weather conditions.
- 2. Observation satellites can detect fires before they spread.
- 3. Navigation satellites guide ships at sea and airplanes in the sky.
- 4. Information on the movement of troops on the ground is provided by military satellites.
- 5. Satellites in orbit can sometimes be repaired by computers on Earth.
- 6. The former Soviet Union sent the first human-made satellite into orbit.





### Sentence Combining

Read the example and the model combinations below. Then rewrite sentences 1 and 2 following the models.

Example: Military satellites are used to take photographs of troop

movements. They are also used to direct missiles.

Models:

- a. Military satellites are used to take photographs of troop movements and direct missiles.
- b. In addition to taking photographs of troop movements, military satellites are used to direct missiles.
- c. Taking photographs of troop movements and directing missiles are two uses of military satellites.

| 1. | Scientific research satellites are used to study the Sun. They are also used |
|----|--|
|    | to do laboratory experiments.  |
|    | a  |
|    | b  |
|    | c  |
| 2. | Weather satellites are used to collect information about weather patterns.   |
|    | They can also give warnings of dangerous weather conditions.                 |
|    | a  |
|    | b  |
|    | C.   |



# Writing

The reading in this lesson discussed six types of human-made satellites. Choose something of interest to you that comes in at least three different types. In your writing, give information about each type. Before you start writing, you might want to collect ideas in a chart like the one on page 158.



Instagram:@IELTS\_Matters

# **Comets**

lesson

2



### **Before You Read**

- 1. What do you know about comets?
- 2. Have you ever seen a comet in the sky?
- 3. A long time ago, people were afraid of comets. Why do you think that was?

### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. These **bizarre** objects seemed to appear suddenly out of nowhere, and they seemed to have no predictable pattern.
- 2. Some people thought comets were **messengers**, bringing news of disasters to come.
- 3. Halley **compiled** his data in a book about the location of the stars in the sky.
- 4. In 2004, the *Stardust* spacecraft flew within 236 kilometers of a comet called Wild 2.
- 5. If we are **fortunate**, comets will provide us with answers to some important questions.



If you happen to gaze up in the sky at just the right time in the year 2061, you might get to see one of the most famous comets of all. It's called Halley's Comet, and people get a chance to see it every 76 years when 5 the comet's orbit brings it close to Earth.

Comets are satellites made up **prin arily** of ice (both water and frozen gases) and dust. All comets orbit the Sun, but some complete a revolution of the Sun in just a few years while others need several hundred thousand 10 years. When a comet passes close to the Sun, the ice in the comet melts and dust **particles** are released. These dust particles form the comet's famous tail, or "long hair," which can extend for more than 10 million kilometers. It should be no surprise that the word *comet* 15 comes from the Greek word kometes, which means "long-haired."

For much of human history, people were terrified of comets. These **bizarre** objects seemed to appear suddenly out of nowhere, and unlike the Sun and stars, they 20 seemed to have no predictable pattern. Some people thought comets were messengers, bringing news of disasters to come. Comets were blamed for earthquakes, wars, floods, and an assortment of other catastrophes. It wasn't until late in the 17th century that Sir Isaac Newton 25 discovered that comets orbit the Sun in predictable patterns, a discovery that helped to <u>dispel</u> many people's fear of the long-haired messengers of **doom**.

Edmond Halley, another famous astronomer, was born in London, England, in 1656. He studied 30 astronomy at Oxford University until 1676, when he went off to study the stars and planets of the southern hemisphere. Later, he compiled his data in a book about the location of the stars in the sky; he was the first person to map them accurately. Halley also observed 35 the Moon and studied how it affects the ocean tides. He helped to find a way to measure distances in space. This measurement system was used by other scientists to

mainly

very small pieces

very strange

get rid of unhappy ending



learn about the size of our solar system and the distances of many stars and planets from Earth.

Edmond Halley was especially **fond** of studying comets. He read about comets and observed them in the sky. He learned about the way they move around the Sun, each comet following a different path and traveling at its own speed. Over time, he calculated the orbits of 24 comets that he had either read about or seen himself.

Halley noticed that the paths of a comet seen in 1531 and of a comet seen in 1607 were identical to the path of a comet he had observed in 1682. He concluded that these three comets were, in fact, the same comet.

Because Halley accurately predicted that the comet would come again in 1758, it was decided to name the comet after him. The earliest known reports of Halley's Comet were actually made over 2,000 years ago by Chinese astronomers, so we know that it has been orbiting the Sun for more than 2,000 years. Halley's Comet is one of the brightest comets—bright enough for people to see without a telescope.

The orbits of more than 850 comets have now been calculated. Of these, at least 184 are called **periodic**comets because they orbit the Sun in less than 200 years. Studying comets may give us information about the **origins** and **formation** of the solar system. In 2004, the *Stardust* spacecraft flew within 236 kilometers of a comet called Wild 2. From this distance, the *Stardust*was able to take extraordinarily detailed photographs of the comet. Then, in a 12-minute pass through Wild 2's dust and gas cloud, the *Stardust* mission was able to collect a spoonful of comet dust to bring back to Earth for <u>further</u> study. Another spacecraft called *Rosetta* is expected to actually land on a comet named

With satellites providing more and more information, comets will continue to <u>captivate</u> professional and amateur astronomers, as well as the general public. And if we are fortunate, comets may soon answer some <u>fundamental</u> questions about the origins of the solar system.

Churyumov-Gerasimenko in the year 2014.

beginnings inside

additional; more

interest greatly

basic; primary



165



|     | primary   | particle  |           | messenger           | dispel            |
|-----|---|---|-----------|---------------------|-------------------|
|     | doomed  | periodically                                    |           | originated          | formation         |
|     | further   | fundamentals                                    |           | fond                | fortunate         |
| 1.  | She got a   | She got a of sand in her eye, and now it hurts. |           |                     |                   |
| 2.  | Wouldn't you ra                                     | ther be a                                       |           | of good ne          | ws than of bad    |
|     | news?   |   |           |                     |                   |
| 3.  | Where can you g                                     | get   |           | information abou    | t comets?         |
| 4.  | My  | reason  | for leav  | ing the job was the | e long hours.     |
| 5.  | You need to und                                     | erstand the                                     |           | of science          | e before you      |
|     | specialize.   |   |           |                     |                   |
| 6.  | He's  | of cat  | s, but he | doesn't like dogs   |                   |
| 7.  | He thinks he is_                                    |   | to c      | die young just beca | ause his father   |
|     | did.  |   |           |                     |                   |
| 8.  | The   | of the  | solar sys | stem may never be   | edescribed        |
|     | accurately.   |   |           |                     |                   |
| 9.  | She took a short                                    | plane trip to try                               | r to      | h                   | er fear of flying |
| 10. | My sister doesn'                                    | t live very far av                              | way so I  | get to visit her    |                   |
|     | -   | •   |           |                     |                   |
|     |   |   |           | ds who care so mu   | uch about her.    |
| 12. | That very tall tree from a tiny seed.               |   |           |                     |                   |
|     |   |   |           |                     |                   |
|     | Vocabulary  | _   |           |                     |                   |
|     | bizarre   | assortment                                      | C         | ompile              | within            |
|     | further   | captivating                                     |           | ispelled            | general           |
|     | fond  | origin  |           | rimarily            | fortunately       |
| 1.  | There is an   |   | of drink  | s on the table. Ch  | oose the one      |
|     | you want.   |   |           |                     |                   |
| 2.  | This book has a story. I don't think you'll be able |   |           |                     |                   |
|     | put it down.  |   |           |                     |                   |
| 3.  | She likes to  |   | a list of | things she needs    | before she goes   |
|     | shopping.   |   |           |                     |                   |
|     | 1780-07   |   |           |                     |                   |

| 4.   | You can do many diff                                   | erent things with a             | purpose tool.             |  |  |  |
|------|--|---------------------------------|---------------------------|--|--|--|
| 5.   | After his accident, he                                 | things like                     |                           |  |  |  |
|      | singing on the train and throwing things at people.    |                                 |                           |  |  |  |
| 6.   | There was a fire at th                                 | e school, but                   | no children were          |  |  |  |
|      | there at the time.                                     |                                 |                           |  |  |  |
| 7.   | What is the  | of the word come                | et?                       |  |  |  |
| 8.   | 8. He said he would be here an hour, but it has alread |                                 |                           |  |  |  |
|      | been an hour and 20                                    | minutes and he's still not her  | e.                        |  |  |  |
| 9.   | Weather satellites are                                 | usedfo                          | or collecting information |  |  |  |
|      | about the weather.                                     |                                 |                           |  |  |  |
| 10.  | He's   | of all his grandchildren        | , but I think he likes    |  |  |  |
|      | Sylvia best.   |                                 |                           |  |  |  |
| 11.  | By coming to the mee                                   | eting, the president            | reports that              |  |  |  |
|      | he was very sick.                                      |                                 |                           |  |  |  |
| 12.  | After they completed                                   | the first part of the test, the | students needed           |  |  |  |
|      |  | instruction.                    | ,                         |  |  |  |
| P 53 |  |                                 |                           |  |  |  |
| C    | Vocabulary Revie                                       | ew: Definitions                 |                           |  |  |  |
| λΛαί | ch the grounds quith their                             | definitions                     |                           |  |  |  |
|      | tch the words with their                               |                                 | .1                        |  |  |  |
|      |  | a. baked at a high tempera      | ature                     |  |  |  |
|      | 2. off-limits  | • •                             | 1'01 '                    |  |  |  |
|      | 3. fired   |                                 | •                         |  |  |  |
|      | 4. adapt   | d. farm animals such as ca      |                           |  |  |  |
|      | 5. millennia   | 0 0                             |                           |  |  |  |
|      | 6. utopia  | f. something you can't ge       |                           |  |  |  |
|      | O  | g. the number of years son      | nething lives             |  |  |  |
|      | 8. commercial  | O                               |                           |  |  |  |
|      | 9. abundant  | i. change in order to survi     | ve                        |  |  |  |
|      | 10. lifespan   | j. thousands of years           |                           |  |  |  |
|      |  | k. not available; forbidden     |                           |  |  |  |
|      |  | l. money-making                 |                           |  |  |  |

# Comprehension Check: Multiple Choice

| Cir | cle the letter of the best answer.  |
|-----|---|
| 1.  | All comets, a. orbit the Earth b. consist of ice and dust c. appear every 76 years  |
| 2.  | When a comet gets close to the Sun,  a. the dust particles melt  b. it slows down  c. the ice melts                                     |
| 3.  | People used to be afraid of comets because  a. they didn't appear regularly  b. they were made of ice and dust  c. they orbited the Sun |
| 4.  | People were less afraid of comets after Newton discovered that comets  a. travel in a regular pattern  b. orbit the Forth in a pattern  |

- b. orbit the Earth in a pattern c. are messengers of doom
- 5. Edmond Halley was \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. a French astronomer
  - b. ignorant of comets
  - c. a compiler of data about comets
- 6. Halley's Comet appears \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. every 60 years
  - b. periodically
  - c. at unexpected times
- The first report of Halley's Comet was \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. over 2,000 years ago
  - b. in 1531
  - c. in 1758
- 8. Halley's Comet will appear again near Earth in \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. 2061 and 2102
  - b. 2061 and 2127
  - c. 2061 and 2137

- 9. The *Stardust* mission collected \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. ice from a comet
  - b. dust from a comet
  - c. photographs of the Sun
- 10. The satellite *Rosetta* is supposed to \_\_\_\_\_ the comet

Churyumov-Gerasimenko.

- a. set down on
- b. destroy
- c. navigate

# e

# Comprehension Questions

- 1. What are three ways in which all comets are alike?
- 2. What are three ways in which comets are different from each other?
- 3. In the past, why were people terrified of comets?
- 4. In the past, what did people think comets were?
- 5. What did Sir Isaac Newton discover about comets?
- 6. What did Edmond Halley learn about comets?
- 7. Why did Edmond Halley have a comet named after him?
- 8. What did the *Stardust* mission do to help us learn more about comets?
- 9. What is the Rosetta's mission?
- 10. Why do you think so many people are captivated by comets?





# Reading Strategy: Identifying Cause and Effect

When you read, it's important to notice the cause and effect relationship between ideas in the text.

Match each cause on the left to an effect on the right. Write the number of the cause on the line.

| Cause                              | Effect                        |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. People didn't understand what   | The Sun melts the ice in      |
| comets were.                       | the comet.                    |
| 2. A comet moves close to the Sun. | It was able to take detailed  |
| 3. Some comets are very bright.    | photographs.                  |
| 4. The satellite flew within       | It was able to collect dust   |
| 236 kilometers of the comet.       | particles.                    |
| 5. The satellite flew through the  | 1 They were afraid of comets. |
| comet's tail.                      | You can see them without      |
|                                    | a telescope.                  |
|                                    | They reported its appearance  |
|                                    | over 2,000 years ago.         |



# Vocabulary Expansion: Collocations

We often use certain nouns and verbs together. For example, the verb *dispel* means "to cause something to go away," but only certain things can be *dispelled*. You might talk about dispelling someone's shyness, but you probably wouldn't talk about dispelling a wild animal.

Match the verbs and nouns that you can use together. Write the number of one or more verbs next to each noun.

|    | Verbs   |  |    | Nouns                 |
|----|---------|--|----|-----------------------|
| 1. | dispel  |  | a. | facts                 |
| 2. | combat  |  | b. | someone's attention   |
| 3. | compile |  | c. | crops                 |
| 4. | divert  |  | d. | a crime               |
| 5. | monitor |  | e. | someone's fear        |
| 6. | harvest |  | f. | the water in a river  |
| 7. | commit  |  | g. | someone's performance |
| 8. | applaud |  | h. | vandalism             |
|    |         |  | i. | a disease             |
|    |         |  | j. | statistics            |
|    |         |  | k. | the ship's movements  |
|    |         |  | l. | someone's belief      |
|    |         |  | m. | a child's temperature |



# Grammar Review: Compound Nouns

The words *space station* and *research satellite* are called compound nouns because they are formed by putting two nouns together.

Use the nouns below to form 10 compound nouns. Write your compound nouns on the lines given.

|   | military  | barrier    | research    |
|---|-----------|------------|-------------|
|   | solar     | navigation | management  |
|   | system    | code       | data        |
|   | emergency | satellite  | catastrophe |
|   | facility  | treaty     |             |
| 1 |           | 6          |             |
| 2 |           | 7          |             |
| 3 |           | 8          |             |
| 4 |           | 9          |             |
| 5 |           | 10         |             |
|   |           |            |             |





# Sentence Combining

Read the example and the model combinations below. Then rewrite sentences 1 to 3 following the models.

*Example:* Halley correctly predicted that the comet would appear again in 1758. For this reason, it was decided to name the comet after him.

Models: a. Because Halley correctly predicted that the comet would appear again in 1758, it was decided to name the comet after him.

- b. It was decided to name the comet after Halley because he correctly predicted that it would appear again in 1758.
- c. The reason the comet was named after Halley was that he correctly predicted that it would appear again in 1758.

1. Newton explained that comets moved in predictable patterns. For this



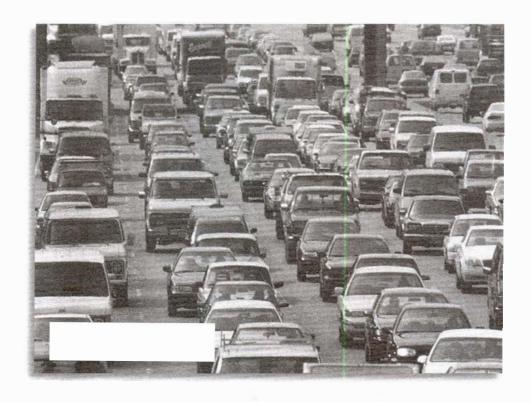
# Writing

Have you ever thought about traveling in space? Imagine that you are exploring the solar system. Use your imagination to write a description of your trip.

# Motor Vehicles: The Pros and Cons

lesson

3



# **Before You Read**

- 1. What are some positive effects of automobiles?
- 2. What are some negative effects of automobiles?
- 3. What do you think the future of the automobile is?



## **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. **In spite of** their advantages, motor vehicles have many critics because of their harmful effects.
- 2. At **peak** traffic periods in Los Angeles, it can take three hours to drive only 32 kilometers.
- 3. Two-thirds of its downtown area is **devoted** to roads, parking lots, gas stations, and other automobile-related uses.
- 4. Automobiles and highways have provided almost unlimited **mobility** to people in the United States.

# Motor Vehicles: The Pros and Cons



The automobile has many advantages. Above all, it offers people the freedom to go where they want to go, when they want to go there. The basic purpose of a motor vehicle is to get people from point A to point B as cheaply, quickly, and safely as possible. However, to most people, cars are also personal <u>fantasy</u> machines that serve as <u>symbols</u> of power, success, speed, excitement, and adventure.

dream; illusion

In addition, much of the world's economy is built on producing motor vehicles and supplying roads, services, and repairs for those vehicles. Half of the world's paychecks and resource use are auto related.

In the United States, one of every six dollars spent and one of every six nonfarm jobs are connected to the automobile or related industries, such as oil, steel, rubber, plastics, automobile services, and highway construction. These industries account for 20 percent of the annual GNP and provide about 18 percent of all federal taxes. Together, they also are the world's largest consumer of energy and raw materials.

explain

users

In spite of their advantages, motor vehicles have many critics because of their harmful effects on human lives and on air, water, land, and wildlife. The automobile may be the most **destructive** machine ever invented.

Though we tend to **deny** it, riding in cars is one of the

refuse to admit

most dangerous things we do in our daily lives.

Since 1885, when Karl Benz built the first automobile, almost 18 million people have been killed by motor vehicles. Every year, cars and trucks worldwide kill an average of 250,000 people—as many as were killed in the atomic bomb attacks on Hiroshima and Nagasaki—and injure or permanently disable 10 million more. Half of the world's people will be involved in an auto accident at some time during their lives.



By providing almost unlimited **mobility**, automobiles and highways have been the biggest <u>factor</u> leading to urban <u>sprawl</u> in the United States and other countries with large livable land areas. This <u>dispersal</u> of businesses and people from cities has made it
increasingly difficult for subways, trolleys, and buses to be economically <u>feasible</u> alternatives to private cars.

Los Angeles is a global symbol of urban sprawl, built around a vast network of freeways. An estimated one-third of the city's total metropolitan area and two-thirds of its downtown area are **devoted** to roads, parking lots, gas stations, and other automobile-related uses. Each day, its network of streets and freeways is crowded with more than 5 million vehicles, which are responsible for 85 percent of both the air pollution and the noise in this urban area. At **peak** traffic periods, it can take three hours to drive only 32 kilometers.

In 1907, the average speed of horse-drawn vehicles through New York city was 18.5 kilometers per hour. Today, cars and trucks with the potential power of 100 to 300 horses creep along New York City streets at an average speed of 8 kilometers per hour. In London, average auto speeds are about 13 kilometers per hour, and they are even lower in Paris and in Tokyo, where everyday traffic is called *tsukin jigoku*, or "commuting hell."

Streets that used to be for people are now for cars. **Pedestrians** and people riding bicycles in the streets are subjected to noise, pollution, stress, and danger.

Motor vehicles are the largest source of air pollution, producing a haze of smog over the world's cities. In the United States, they produce at least 50 percent of the country's air pollution, even though U.S. <u>emission</u> standards are as <u>strict</u> as any in the world.

Worldwide, motor vehicles account for 13 percent of the input of the primary greenhouse gas, carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>), into the atmosphere. In the United States, they account for almost 25 percent of the country's CO<sub>2</sub> emissions (the highest in the world) and 13 percent of the emissions of chlorofluorocarbons, which act as

cause; fact to be considered outward growth spreading out in different directions

possible

people who are walking

something sent out into the air difficult to obey



75 greenhouse gases and also deplete life-sustaining ozone in the stratosphere.

Motor vehicle use is also responsible for water pollution from oil spills, gasoline spills, and leakage and dumping of used engine oil, as well as contamination of 80 underground drinking water from leaking underground oil and gasoline storage tanks.

Oil addiction, based mostly on addiction to energyinefficient gasoline-powered vehicles, also increases the chance of wars, as the United States and other countries attempt to protect oil supplies in the oil-rich but volatile Middle East. What do you think should be done?

use up; reduce by using too much keeping in existence; maintaining

likely to change suddenly; explosive

From Living in the Environment: Principles, Connections, and Solutions, 7th edition by G. Tyler Miller © 1992. Reprinted with permission of Brooks/Cole, a division of Thomson Learning: www.thomsonrights.com.

# Vocabulary

|    | fantasy   | symbol   | construction              | account for |  |  |
|----|---|--|---------------------------|-------------|--|--|
|    | annual  | consumes   | in spite of               | deny        |  |  |
|    | mobile  | factor   | sprawled                  | disperse    |  |  |
| 1. | The Olympic   | (  | consists of five rings.   |             |  |  |
| 2. | My  | My is to sail around the world, but I know it will |                           |             |  |  |
|    | never happen.   |  |                           |             |  |  |
| 3. | 3. The rising cost of gasoline was one in his decision  |  |                           |             |  |  |
|    | get rid of his car.                                     |  |                           |             |  |  |
| 4. | Your  | income is  | s 12 times your monthl    | ly income.  |  |  |
| 5. | A large truck   |  | gasoline faster than a si | mall car.   |  |  |
| 6. | People keep buying large cars the harmful pollution     |  |                           |             |  |  |
|    | they create.  |  |                           |             |  |  |
| 7. | You don't have to have a car to be                      |  |                           |             |  |  |
| 8. | No one can walk into this room because the children are |  |                           |             |  |  |
|    | on the floor watching TV                                |  |                           |             |  |  |



| 9.  | How can she  | causing the accident? I saw her do it. |                       |                     |
|-----|--|--|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 10. | The wind helps to _                                    | the seeds.                             |                       |                     |
| 11. |  | jobs are among the most dangerous.     |                       |                     |
|     | I can't  |  |                       |                     |
|     | Maybe I fell asleep.                                   |  |                       |                     |
|     | -  |  |                       |                     |
|     | Vocabulary   |  |                       |                     |
|     | feasible   | alternative                            | devote                | peak                |
|     | pedestrians  |  |                       | •                   |
|     | attempted  | volatile                               | sustain               | destructive         |
| 1.  | My boss is a   |  | person; it doesn't ta | ke much to make     |
|     | him angry.   |  |                       |                     |
| 2.  | Solar-powered cars a                                   | ire an                                 | to gas                | oline-powered cars  |
| 3.  | The rules were very                                    |  | when the ch           | ildren were young,  |
|     | but as they got older                                  | , the rules we                         | re relaxed.           |                     |
| 4.  | . The football team gave their performance last        |  |                       |                     |
|     | weekend. I really do                                   | n't think they                         | could have done an    | y better.           |
| 5.  | They   | to drive                               | e across the country  | in a week, but it   |
|     | actually took them lo                                  | nger than tha                          | t.                    |                     |
| 6.  | Much of our air pollution comes from car               |  |                       |                     |
| 7.  | The runners are going fast, but I don't think they can |  |                       |                     |
|     | that speed for long.                                   |  |                       |                     |
| 8.  | In some states, you h                                  | ave to stop fo                         | r                     | who are trying      |
|     | to cross the street.                                   |  |                       |                     |
| 9.  | It's not   | to dri                                 | ve there in 8 hours,  | but I think you can |
|     | get there in 10 hours.                                 |  |                       |                     |
| 10. | He can   | sever                                  | al hours to the proje | ct tomorrow, but    |
|     | that's all.  |  |                       |                     |
| 11. | The local gasoline su                                  | pplies were _                          | <u>.</u>              | Therefore, they     |
|     | couldn't use their car                                 |  |                       |                     |
| 12. | Cutting down the tre                                   | es had a                               | effe                  | ect on the          |
|     | mountainside.  |  |                       |                     |
|     |  |  |                       |                     |



### Vocabulary Review: Odd One Out

Circle the word that doesn't fit in each group.

- 1. register, rotate, revolve, orbit
- 2. doom, disaster, motion, catastrophe
- 3. deplete, detect, decline, decrease
- 4. barren, inhospitable, secluded, infertile
- 5. daring, bold, courageous, curious
- 6. astronomy, history, erosion, geology
- 7. incredibly, extremely, dramatically, appropriately
- 8. peninsula, pesticides, erosion, drought

| u        | COI  | nprenension Check: Irue/Faise/Not Enough Information                     |
|----------|------|--|
|          | 1.   | The highway construction industry is the world's largest                 |
|          |      | consumer of raw materials.   |
|          | 2.   | One of the harmful effects of automobiles is air pollution.              |
|          | 3.   | Riding in cars is the most dangerous thing we do.                        |
|          | 4.   | More than 10 million people have been killed in motor vehicle accidents. |
| <u> </u> | 5.   | The first car was built in Germany in 1885.                              |
|          | 6.   | Fifty percent of the people in the world will be in a motor vehicle      |
|          |      | accident at some time in their lives.                                    |
|          | 7.   | When a city is spread out over a large area, it's difficult to provide   |
|          |      | good public transportation for the people who live there.                |
|          | 8.   | In Los Angeles, it can take three hours to drive 32 kilometers.          |
|          | 9.   | Vehicles in New York City travel more slowly now than they did           |
|          |      | in 1907.   |
|          | _10. | The United States has the highest carbon dioxide emissions of any        |
|          |      | country in the world.  |





### Comprehension Questions

- 1. What are some advantages of cars?
- 2. If people stopped using cars, what effect would this have on the economy?
- 3. How many people are killed each year in car and truck accidents?
- 4. What percentage of the world's people will be involved in at least one car or truck accident during their lives?
- 5. What is the connection between urban sprawl and cars?
- 6. Why isn't public transportation a feasible alternative to cars in the United States?
- 7. If there were suddenly no fuel for cars, what would Los Angeles be like?
- 8. How has traveling by car in New York City changed since 1907?
- 9. What role do cars play in polluting the air?
- 10. What are some other disadvantages of cars?



### Reading Strategy: Classifying

There are many different ways the ideas in a text can be organized. Organizing by time sequence and organizing by cause and effect are just two of the more common ways. Once you understand how a text is organized, it's easier to take notes and remember what you read.

The ideas in the text on pages 175–177 are organized by advantages and disadvantages. Use the T-chart below to make notes on the ideas in the text.

| Advantages | Disadvantages |
|------------|---------------|
|            |               |
|            |               |
|            |               |
|            |               |
|            |               |
|            |               |
|            |               |
|            |               |





# Vocabulary Expansion: Suffixes

You can add the suffix -ly or -ally to many adjectives to form an adverb.

Choose the correct form of the word in the chart to complete each question below. Then answer the questions.

|    | Adjective    | Adverb        |
|----|--------------|---------------|
| 1. | annual       | annually      |
| 2. | symbolic     | symbolically  |
| 3. | alternative  | alternatively |
| 4. | strict       | strictly      |
| 5. | persistent   | persistently  |
| 6. | curious      | curiously     |
| 7. | former       | formerly      |
| 8. | unimaginable | unimaginably  |

| 1. What is one thing you do          | ?                     |                     |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 2. How can you represent the word    | d love                | ?                   |
| 3. What is one                       | _ plan to putting you | ır money in a bank? |
| 4. Do you think city streets should  | be                    | for pedestrians     |
| 5. What is one thing you have to pa  | ractice               | in order to         |
| become good at it?                   |                       |                     |
| 6. What is one place on Earth that y | you are               | about?              |
| 7. Where did you                     | go to school?         |                     |
| 8. What is one thing that it would b | be                    | for you to do?      |



### Grammar Review: Noun Substitutes

Read each sentence or pair of sentences and study the pronoun in **bold** print. Circle the noun or noun phrase that each pronoun replaces.

- 1. The automobile has many advantages. Above all, it offers people freedom.
- 2. In spite of **their** advantages, motor vehicles have many critics because of their harmful effects on human lives and on air, water, land, and wildlife.
- 3. Though we tend to deny it, riding in care is one of the most dangerous things we do in our daily lives.
- 4. An estimated one-third of the city's total metropolitan area and two-thirds of **its** downtown area are devoted to roads, parking lots, gas stations, and other automobile-related uses.
- 5. In London, average auto speeds are about 13 kilometers per hour, and **they** are even lower in Paris.
- 6. Motor vehicles are the largest source of air pollution, producing a haze of smog over the world's cities. In the United States, **they** produce at least 50 percent of the country's air pollution, even though U.S. emission standards are as strict as any in the world.
- 7. Worldwide, motor vehicles account for 13 percent of the input of the primary greenhouse gas, carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>), into the atmosphere. In the United States, **they** account for almost 25 percent of the country's CO<sub>2</sub> emissions.



### Sentence Combining

Read the example and the model combinations below. Then rewrite sentences 1 and 2 following the models.

*Example*: Los Angeles is a global symbol of urban sprawl. It is built around a vast network of freeways.

Models: a. Los Angeles, which is built around a vast network of freeways, is a global symbol of urban sprawl.

- b. Los Angeles is a global symbol of urban sprawl, built around a vast network of freeways.
- c. Built around a vast network of freeways, Los Angeles is a global symbol of urban sprawl.



| 1. Automobile-related businesses make up a huge industrial compleare responsible for 20 percent of the annual GNP. |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|--|
|  | a  |  |  |  |  |
|  | b  |  |  |  |  |
|  | c  |  |  |  |  |
| 2.   | Motor vehicles are harmful to the environment. They are responsible for 25 percent of U.S. carbon dioxide emissions. |  |  |  |  |
|  | a  |  |  |  |  |
|  | b  |  |  |  |  |
|  | c  |  |  |  |  |
| j  | Writing  |  |  |  |  |
| Th   | ink of different ways to complete this title: The Advantages and   |  |  |  |  |
| Di   | Disadvantages of Choose one idea, and explain its  |  |  |  |  |
| ad   | vantage and disadvantages. Later, share your writing with a classmate.   |  |  |  |  |
|  | mple titles  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Advantages and Disadvantages of Reading the Newspaper  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Advantages and Disadvantages of Living in a Foreign Country  |  |  |  |  |
|  | Advantages and Disadvantages of Having a Job You Hate  |  |  |  |  |
| The  | The Advantages and Disadvantages of Being Short  |  |  |  |  |

¢

# **New Plants**

### lesson





### **Before You Read**

- 1. What are some of the most common foods in your country?
- 2. What foods available today in your area weren't available 10 years ago?
- 3. What are some ways we can solve the problem of hunger in the world?



### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. Some types of food are eaten in just a few places, while others, like rice, are eaten **widely**.
- 2. The cocoyam, which is similar to the potato, can grow in a hot climate **whether** it's wet or dry.
- 3. Scientists are **optimistic** that people will change the foods they eat, because they have done so in the past.
- 4. It is now possible to grow a type of Vitamin A**-boosted** rice that has significantly more Vitamin A than other types of rice.





As the population of the world increases, countries need to produce more and more food. At the same time, however, deserts are expanding, and millions of people are building houses on land that used to be farmland.

How can we solve a problem that seems to have no solution?

One way to increase the planet's food supply is for people to start eating different plants. There are more than 350,000 kinds of plants in the world. Of these, approximately 20,000 are <u>suitable</u> for humans to eat. But today, over 50 percent of our food supply comes from just three kinds of plants: corn, wheat, and rice. In fact, it is common in developing countries for people to depend on only one or two plants for their food. A disease or bad weather can destroy these crops, leaving people with nothing to eat.

All people, and especially children, need protein to grow and to stay healthy. Many kinds of food contain protein, but some foods are better sources of protein than others. For example, corn, wheat, and rice are only 8 to 14 percent protein. Meat and fish are 20 to 30 percent protein. Soybeans, which are an important food in China and Japan, are almost 40 percent protein. Other beans eaten widely in Latin America have about the same amount of protein as meat.

However, there are other plants that are rich in protein. People in parts of Papua–New Guinea and in Southeast Asia eat winged beans, which are over 30 percent protein. The marama bean, as rich in protein as the soybean, grows wild in the Kalahari Desert in southern Africa.

The potato, an important food in Europe and North America, will not grow in a hot climate. But the cocoyam, which is similar to the potato, is eaten in Latin America and West Africa. This versatile plant can grow in a hot climate, and it does not matter **whether** the climate is wet or dry.

appropriate



Scientists are now experimenting with crops of buffalo gourds in Mexico and Lebanon. This plant grows wild in Arizona's Sonora Desert, and it could grow in other dry areas as well. The seeds of this plant are up to 35 percent protein.

A few years ago, a new kind of teosinte plant was discovered in the mountains of Mexico. (*Teosinte* is pronounced "tay-oh-SIN-tay.") It is a relative of corn, but it can grow in a wetter climate than corn can. Even more important, teosinte plants can produce crops every year. They do not have to be replanted from seeds as corn does.

Nevertheless, there may be a problem with "new" plants. Will people be willing to eat them? Food is an important part of our lives, and it is often difficult to change to a new and different kind of food. However, scientists are **optimistic**. They know that 500 years ago

- 55 Europeans thought they were eating the best food in the world. Then, in the 16th century, a wide assortment of new foods, such as potatoes, tomatoes, pineapple, and chocolate, started arriving by boat from Central and South America. At first most Europeans wouldn't touch
- these bizarre foods. In fact, many people thought these foods were poisonous. Over time, however, people accepted these foods, and now it's hard to imagine Italian food without tomatoes or a British meal without potatoes. In the 1920s, George Washington Carver
- started experimenting with the peanut, which is as rich in protein as meat. He developed many ways to use the peanut as food, and today it is eaten all over the world. Perhaps in a few years teosinte and the marama bean will be as widely used as the peanut. And consider the soybean, which is now the most important plant in the
  - soybean, which is now the most important plant in the United States. Eighty years ago, the soybean wasn't even grown as an industrial crop!

Some people feel strongly that **genetically** engineered food could solve the world's food <u>crisis</u>.

Humans have been using **selective breeding** for millennia to improve food crops, but genetic engineering provides a way to greatly accelerate the

however; in spite of

disaster; catastrophe



187

process and to introduce <u>traits</u> from unrelated species. Today, many crops have been genetically **modified** to 80 be resistant to some types of pests, while others have been engineered to make them taste better or last longer. Available also are plants that have been genetically <u>altered</u> to make them more <u>nutritious</u>. Biotechnology companies call them "prescription" 85 foods because they are supposed to solve health problems. Examples of prescription foods are Vitamin A-boosted golden rice and protein-enhanced potatoes. Other crops have been modified to make them droughtor salt-resistant, which makes it possible for them to 90 grow in poor soil.

The production of genetically modified (GM) food is highly controversial. Environmentalists worry that these crops could eventually become uncontrollable weeds or that they might breed with wild plants or other crops. Some scientists claim that genetic engineering will actually have a negative **impact** on crop yields and soil quality and in the end will just deprive more farmers of land on which they could grow their own food.

In addition to concerns about how GM crops might affect the environment, there is the question of whether these crops would actually have a positive effect on the global food shortage. Some people have suggested that biotech companies have started promoting GM foods as a solution to the world's food problem in order to change the negative **impression** that many people have of these foods. There are also many people who believe that prescription foods won't help the situation because they do not address the real cause of malnutrition, which is **poverty**. According to Daycha Siripatra, who works for the Alternative Agriculture Network in Thailand, "If the poor had land, they would have better diets. The poor don't need Vitamin A. They need Vitamin L; that's Vitamin Land. And they need Vitamin 115 M; that's Vitamin Money. Malnutrition is because of

characteristics changed

changed; modified high in nutrients businesses using biochemistry to make new medicines, etc. increased; raised improved

effect

a feeling about something

deal with



poverty, not [a lack of] technology."

100



# Vocabulary

|    |            | suitable<br>optimistic | widely<br>genetically | whether selective |                          |
|----|------------|------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
|    |            | traits                 | modify                | pest              | altered                  |
|    | 1.         | Changing the color     | r of her hair r       | eally             | her                      |
|    |            | appearance.            |                       |                   |                          |
| 2  | 2.         | We had to              |                       | our vacation pla  | ns when we realized tha  |
|    |            | we had less money      | than we tho           | ught we had.      |                          |
| 3  | 3.         | An                     | persor                | sees the positive | e side of things.        |
| 4  | <b>1</b> . | A horse with very      | good                  | wi                | ll be expensive.         |
|    | 5.         | Patience is one of r   | ny brother's l        | oest              | ÷                        |
| (  | 5.         | They've decided to     | go to Costa           | Rica              | or not their             |
|    |            | friends are there.     |                       |                   |                          |
| 7  | 7.         | Many more studen       | its apply to H        | arvard than are a | ccepted; it's a          |
|    |            |                        | _ school.             |                   |                          |
| 8  | 3.         | Some diseases are J    | passed                | fi                | rom one generation to    |
|    |            | the next.              |                       |                   |                          |
| Ç  | €.         | Poisonous plants a     | re not                | fo                | r human consumption.     |
| 10 | ).         | Genetically engine     | ered food cou         | ld possibly solve | the world's food crisis; |
|    |            |                        | $_{-}$ , the produ    | ction of such foo | ds is highly             |
|    |            | controversial.         |                       |                   |                          |
| 11 |            | Some kind of           |                       | got into their g  | garden and ate t le      |
|    |            | tomatoes.              |                       |                   |                          |
| 12 | )          | French is spoken       |                       | in eastern        | Canada.                  |

# **b** Vocabulary

|     |   | prescription impact |                   | 0, 1                            |
|-----|---|---------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|
|     |   | poverty             |                   |                                 |
| 1.  | Children who                                      | o are               | of in             | mportant nutrients may have     |
|     | serious healt                                     | h problems.         |                   |                                 |
| 2.  | He refused to                                     | 0                   | his fina          | ncial problems until finally he |
|     | was forced to                                     | Э.                  |                   |                                 |
| 3.  | To buy most                                       | medicines, you      | need a            | from a doctor.                  |
| 4.  |   | didn't              | exist 50 years a  | go.                             |
| 5.  | What was yo                                       | our                 | of the            | speech? Did you like it?        |
| 6.  | My grandfatl                                      | her had a big _     |                   | on my life.                     |
| 7.  | Apples are _                                      |                     | ; sugar is n      | ot.                             |
| 8.  | If you can't g                                    | et up on the ho     | rse, I can give y | ou a                            |
| 9.  | It's difficult to                                 | o believe that th   | nere can be so n  | nuch in                         |
|     | such a rich co                                    | ountry.             |                   |                                 |
| 10. | The loss of a y                                   | year's food supp    | ply was a         | for the country.                |
| 11. | Lack of rain can have a tremendous impact on crop |                     |                   |                                 |
| 12. | What can you                                      | u put on a potat    | to to             | the flavor?                     |

# C

### Vocabulary Review: Synonyms

### *Match the synonyms.* \_\_\_\_\_\_ 1. annual a. build \_\_\_\_ 2. versatile b. choice c. fascinate \_\_\_\_\_ 3. ban 4. construct d. dispel \_\_\_\_\_ 5. hazy e. forbid \_\_\_\_\_ 6. alternative f. collect \_\_\_\_\_ 7. captivate g. volatile \_\_\_\_\_ 8. get rid of h. yearly \_\_\_\_\_ 9. compile i. unclear \_\_\_\_\_ 10. feasible j. many-sided k. within l. possible Comprehension Check: Multiple Choice Circle the letter of the best answer. 1. Roughly half of our food supply comes from \_\_\_\_\_ kinds of food. a. 350,000 b. 20,000 c. 3 2. Winged beans are \_\_\_\_\_. a. from Latin America



Instagram:@IELTS\_Matters

b. as rich in protein as soybeansc. more than 30 percent protein

3. The potato is \_\_\_\_\_a. a hot-weather cropb. similar to the cocoyamc. originally from Europe

| 4.  | The cocoyam  |
|-----|--|
|     | a. can grow in a hot climate   |
|     | b. is an important food in North America                                 |
|     | c. doesn't grow in wet climates  |
| 5.  | Unlike corn, the teosinte plant  |
|     | a. prefers a dry climate   |
|     | b. produces a crop every year  |
|     | c. has to be planted every year  |
| 6.  | Scientists are optimistic that people might be willing to eat new foods, |
|     | because  |
|     | a. they already eat roughly 20,000 different kinds of food               |
|     | b. they have done it in the past   |
|     | c. they like to change what they eat often                               |
| 7.  | When Europeans first saw tomatoes,                                       |
|     | a. they wanted to try them immediately                                   |
|     | b. they knew they were safe to eat                                       |
|     | c. they thought they were poisonous                                      |
| 8.  | Selective breeding   |
|     | a. has been taking place for a long time                                 |
|     | b. is a new thing  |
|     | c. is impossible   |
| 9.  | Prescription foods are   |
|     | a. genetically altered to be more nutritious                             |
|     | b. enhanced to taste better  |
|     | c. modified to grow in any type of soil                                  |
| 10. | Some people say that GM food won't solve the food crisis because         |
|     |  |

a. it doesn't provide the right nutrients

b. it doesn't address the real cause

c. the food crisis is too serious



### Comprehension Questions

- 1. Roughly how many kinds of plants are there on Earth? How many of those can people safely eat?
- 2. Why do you think so much of our food supply comes from just three kinds of plants?
- 3. What foods are high in protein?
- 4. What information about soybeans does the text on pages 186–188 provide?
- 5. How is the cocoyam different from the potato?
- 6. What is the teosinte plant?
- 7. In the 16th century, how did Europeans react to new foods introduced from Central and South America?
- 8. What food did George Washington Carver get people to try? How?
- 9. What are genetically modified foods?
- 10. Why do some people oppose genetically modified foods?



### Reading Strategy: Identifying Supporting Ideas

Supporting ideas give information to explain a main idea.

For each main idea below, find supporting ideas in the text on pages 186–188. Write the information in the chart.

| Main idea  | Supporting ideas |
|--|------------------|
| Humans make poor use of the plants on Earth.                         |                  |
| It's possible for people to change their eating habits.              |                  |
| Food can be genetically modified for many different purposes.        |                  |
| Some people believe that GM crops can be harmful to the environment. |                  |



# Vocabulary Expansion: Word Forms

Choose the right word form for each sentence below.

| Verb Nou |           | Noun         | Adjective    | Adverb         |
|----------|-----------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1.       | select    | selection    | selective    | selectively    |
| 2.       | prescribe | prescription | prescriptive |                |
| 3.       | enhance   | enhancement  | enhanced     |                |
| 4.       | deprive   | deprivation  | deprived     |                |
| 5.       | alter     | alteration   | altered      |                |
| 6.       |           | nutrient     | nutritious   | nutritiously   |
| 7.       |           | optimism     | optimistic   | optimistically |
| 8.       | resist    | resistance   | resistant    |                |
| 9.       | modify    | modification | modified     |                |
| 10.      | promote   | promotion    | promoted     |                |

| 1. | Do you watch television               | , or do you just watch         |
|----|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
|    | whatever is on?                       |                                |
| 2. | Doctors can m                         | edicine, but nurses can't.     |
| 3. | Scientists use chemicals to           | the flavor of many             |
|    | packaged foods.                       |                                |
| 4. | Water will cau                        | se crops to do poorly or die.  |
| 5. | If your pants are too long, you can t | ake them to a tailor for       |
|    |                                       |                                |
| 6. | Ice cream is less                     | _ than fresh fruit.            |
| 7. | I like to be around                   | people because their           |
|    | is contagious.                        |                                |
| 8. | Healthy people are more               | to the flu than unhealthy      |
|    | people.                               |                                |
| 9. | They the plan l                       | by removing several buildings. |

10. The\_\_\_\_\_\_ of cigarette smoking on television is illegal.



# Grammar Review: Articles

Put an article in each blank if one is necessary.

| Nevertheless, there may be (1) problem with "new" plants. Will                |
|---|
| people be willing to eat them? Food is (2) important part of our lives,       |
| and it is often difficult to change to (3) new and different kind of food.    |
| However, scientists are optimistic. They know that 500 years ago Europeans    |
| thought they were eating (4) best food in the world. Then, in (5)             |
| 16th century, a wide assortment of (6) new foods, such as (7)                 |
| potatoes, tomatoes, pineapple, and chocolate, started arriving by boat from   |
| (8) Central and South America. At first, most Europeans wouldn't              |
| touch these bizarre foods. In fact, many people thought these foods were      |
| poisonous. Over time, however, people accepted these foods, and now it's hard |
| to imagine (9) British meal   |
| without potatoes. In the 1920s, George Washington Carver started              |
| experimenting with (11) peanut, which is as rich in protein as meat. He       |
| developed many ways to use (12) peanut as food, and today it is eaten         |
| all over the world. Perhaps in (13) few years teosinte and the marama         |
| bean will be as widely used as (14) peanut.                                   |



### Sentence Combining

Read the example and the model combinations below. Then rewrite sentences 1 to 3 following the models.

- *Example:* Soybeans are an important food in China and Japan. They are almost 40 percent protein.
- Models: a. Soybeans, which are an important food in China and Japan, are almost 40 percent protein.
  - b. Soybeans, an important food in China and Japan, are almost 40 percent protein.
  - c. An important food in China and Japan, soybeans are almost 40 percent protein.



### Writing

What is your opinion of genetically modified food? Write your opinion and give at least three reasons to support your opinion. Later, share your writing with your classmates.

# Video Highlights



### Before You Watch

- 1. List what you think are the five most important inventions of all time. In a group, compare your lists. Why did you choose the inventions you did? Is e-mail on your list? Why or why not?
- 2. You are going to watch a video about the dangers of e-mail. Match the words and expressions with their definitions.

  - e. analyses thoughts spoken aloud or written as they come to mind, features without reflection
  - g. the final blow and solutions to problems
    h. adage
    - \_\_\_\_\_ unwanted e-mail messages that are sent to many people as a type of junk mail
    - \_\_\_\_\_ the last in a line of problems that makes something fail
    - \_\_\_\_ co-workers
    - \_\_\_\_\_ informal language; street language



### As You Watch

There is one mistake in each of the quotes below. Watch the video, and correct the mistakes.

- "When e-mail came on the scene, its promise, like so many other technological innovations, was that it would save money."
- 2. "It was bad enough when we were just dealing with the telephone."



- 3. "It seems we're writing more and maybe enjoying it less."
- 4. "Research has shown that actual analyses of the messages of email do document that it does have many speech-like features that we, in fact, in the past, used to associate with conversation."
- 5. "... the use of slang and lots of run-on sentences with '...' in between them, almost like a stream of consciousness, instead of carefully formed syntactically beautiful sentences with question marks at the end of them."
- 6. "If e-mail has given rise to a new form of communication, it may also be the final blow for another form: discussion."
- 7. "... that old adage about waiting before you speak—well, who has time to think when you're communicating?"

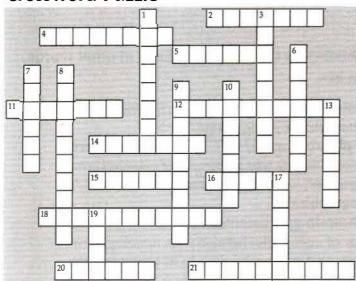
# C After You Watch

- 1. The presenter in the video never states his opinion explicitly. Which statement best summarizes his opinion?
  - a. E-mail is an excellent invention, making it easier to communicate.
  - b. E-mail has some disadvantages, but overall it makes life better.
  - c. E-mail has made it harder, not easier, to communicate well.
- 2. Think about the video and your own experiences with e-mail. Write some advantages and disadvantages of e-mail in the chart below. Discuss the subject with a classmate.

| Advantages of e-mail | Disadvantages of e-mail |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
|                      |                         |
|                      |                         |
|                      |                         |
|                      |                         |
|                      | 0                       |

# **Activity Page**

### **Crossword Puzzle**



| Λ             | CTI | 20 | C |
|---------------|-----|----|---|
| $\overline{}$ |     | ns |   |

- 2. \_\_\_\_\_ is what keeps people's feet on the ground.
- 4. The code was too difficult to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. My brother likes to \_\_\_\_\_ across the sofa so that there is no room for me to sit down.
- 11. Jim works in an office, but has a \_\_\_\_\_ about becoming a movie star.
- 12. a way to describe someone who is always happy
- 14. Many people believe that problems such as malnutrition are the result of \_\_\_\_\_.
- 15. movement
- 16. reproduce
- 18. The belief that murder is wrong is \_\_\_\_\_ to most cultures.
- 20. For some people, a fast, expensive car is a \_\_\_\_\_ of power.
- 21. Driving on the sidewalk is dangerous because you are likely to hit a \_\_\_\_\_.

#### Down

- 1. With family living all around the world, it's rarely \_\_\_\_\_\_ to gather everyone together.
- 3. Their relationship is very \_\_\_\_\_, as they are always fighting and making up again.
- 6. The detectives might find more clues with \_\_\_\_\_ investigation.
- 7. Dark hair, freckles, and musical talent are all \_\_\_\_\_ that you might inherit from your parents.
- 8. Fruits and vegetables are important to a \_\_\_\_\_ diet.
- 9. lucky
- 10. weird, strange
- 13. A new virus that is difficult to treat could cause an international health \_\_\_\_\_.
- 17. Scientists use special machines to \_\_\_\_\_ invisible gases.
- 19. Mount Vesuvius brought \_\_\_\_\_ to the people of Pompeii.



199

# **Dictionary Page**

### **Using Prefixes**

1. Look up *biotechnology* in the dictionary. Look at other words that begin with *bio-*.

**bi-o-chem-is-try** / baɪou'kɛmɪstri/ *n*. [U] the science of the chemistry of living things

**bi-og-ra-phy** /baɪˈɑgrəfi/ n. [C;U] **-phies** the history of a person's life: *He read a biography of a baseball hero.* -n. **biographer**; -adj. **biographical** / ˌbaɪəˈgræfɪkəl/; -adv. **biographically.** 

**bi-o-tech-no-lo-gy** /baroutek'nalədʒi/ n. [U] the business of using biochemistry to develop new medicines and other advances to improve health: Biotechnology develops new drugs to fight cancer and AIDS.

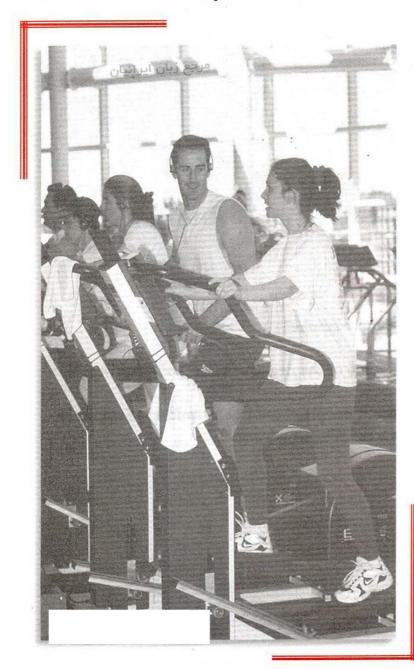
- 2. How are the meanings of the words alike? What does the prefix *bio-* mean?
- 3. Complete the chart, using your dictionary.

| Word          | Related word(s)                                 | Prefix | Meaning          |
|---------------|---|--------|------------------|
| biotechnology | biodegradable<br>biography<br>biology<br>bionic | bio-   | of living things |
| polygon       |   | poly-  |                  |
| geography     |   | geo-   |                  |

# Health and Well-Being

The first wealth is health.

—Ralph Waldo Emerson



# Up in Smoke

### lesson





### Before You Read

- 1. Why do people smoke?
- 2. What are some of the negative effects of smoking?
- 3. Do you think people should be permitted to smoke in public places? Why or why not?



### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. Native Americans used the tobacco plant in different ways. Some people **rubbed** tobacco leaves on their bodies.
- 2. The use of tobacco in cigarettes didn't become popular until late in the 19th century. Thanks to an effective advertising campaign in the 1880s, cigarette smoking became **widespread**.
- 3. In the 1960s, the first warning labels appeared on cigarette packages.
- 4. The children of parents who smoke are more likely to develop respiratory problems than are children who grow up in a smoke-free environment.

# 1 Up in Smoke



Five hundred years ago, you wouldn't have seen anyone growing or smoking tobacco in Europe, the Middle East, Africa, or Asia. Today, however, tobacco is grown in roughly 120 countries, and more than 1 billion people around the world smoke tobacco.

Five hundred years ago, the tobacco plant grew only in the Americas. It was used for a <u>variety</u> of purposes, and it was highly valued. Many Native Americans believed that the tobacco plant had medicinal properties.

assortment; range

- They smoked and chewed tobacco and **rubbed** tobacco leaves on their bodies. Some people believed that the leaves of the tobacco plant helped to reduce pain and heal **wounds** and burns. Others thought tobacco leaves could cure toothaches. In many parts of the Americas,
- smoking tobacco was also an important part of religious <u>rites</u> and ceremonies. People believed that tobacco made it possible to communicate with the spirits.

acts performed in a particular way determined by custom



When the first Spanish explorers arrived in the Americas late in the 15th century, they saw Native
20 Americans "smoke drinking," as they called smoking, and they eagerly tried it. When the first Portuguese explorers arrived in the Americas, they encountered Native Americans who used tobacco as snuff rather than smoking it. Snuff is basically finely ground tobacco,

which is <u>inhaled</u> through the nose. The Portuguese explorers picked up the snuff habit and exported it to Portugal and much of the rest of the world. The Portuguese were also the first people to <u>cultivate</u> the tobacco plant outside of the Americas. The French

ambassador to Portugal, Jean Nicot de Villemain, called tobacco a cure-all for many illnesses, and in 1560 he sent samples of the tobacco plant to France, where it was given the name *Nicotiana* in his <u>honor</u>.

Tobacco was probably taken to England by Spanish and English explorers, who had learned to smoke it in pipes rather than use it as snuff. People in England were at first frightened by the sight of smoke coming out of a person's mouth. The first smokers there were followed and stared at. Before long, however, pipe smoking was a popular activity.

Not everyone in Europe and Asia welcomed the arrival of tobacco and the smoking habit. In Russia, possession of tobacco was forbidden. In Turkey and India, smokers faced the death penalty. The Catholic

45 Pope banned its use in the early 1600s. Both the use and the cultivation of tobacco were banned in Japan in 1609 and in China in 1612. Despite this, smoking gained in popularity. The **failure** of the bans was due in large part to the fact that governments could make money from

the sale of tobacco. For example, King James I of England strongly opposed the use of tobacco, but he often needed money, and **taxing** imported tobacco was an easy way for him to get it.

The use of tobacco in cigarettes didn't become 55 popular until late in the 19th century. Thanks to an effective advertising campaign in the 1880s, cigarette met

breathed in

grow

recognition with appreciation

\_\_\_\_\_

smoking became **widespread**. Back then, most people thought that cigarettes helped to relieve tension; they didn't believe that cigarettes were harmful to a person's health. In the 20th century, however, doctors began seeing an increasing number of cases of **lung** cancer, and in 1950 researchers in England reported the first evidence showing a link between smoking and lung cancer. Fourteen years later, in 1964, the U.S. Surgeon General announced that smoking causes lung cancer.

65 General announced that smoking causes lung cancer. Soon after that, the first warning **labels** appeared on cigarette packages, and cigarette advertisements were banned from television and radio in England and the United States. The tobacco industry responded by

paying filmmakers to show actors and actresses smoking in their movies. Fearing that the health warnings would encourage people to stop smoking, cigarette makers also increased the amount of nicotine in cigarettes to make them more addictive.

Today, we know that there are about 4,000 different chemicals in the smoke of an average cigarette. Some of these chemicals are **toxic**, and at least 60 of them cause cancer. Nicotine, for example, is highly addictive and poisonous. We know that smoking is the **leading** cause of lung diseases, and it has also been linked to heart disease and other kinds of cancer. There is evidence that smokers have more trouble healing after surgery, and they are at greater risk for **post-op complications**.

In addition to harming smokers, cigarette smoke can
have a negative effect on the health of nonsmokers
occupying the same environment. Researchers think
that each year secondhand smoke may be responsible
for about 3,000 lung cancer deaths and 35,000 cases of
heart disease among nonsmoking adults. And not only
adults are affected by inhaling secondhand smoke. The
children of parents who smoke are more likely to
develop respiratory problems than are children who
grow up in a smoke-free environment.

While people have been opposed to smoking as far back as the 1600s, there is now an increasing amount of

poisonous

primary; main

after an operation; after surgery problems; difficulties being in used before by someone else



pressure on smokers to kick the habit. In 1993, the state of Vermont in the United States banned smoking in indoor places; it was the first state to do so. Since then, many countries have banned smoking in public places.

100 And in 2004, the country of Bhutan became the first country to ban the sale of all tobacco products. The effectiveness of these bans varies from country to country. In some places, the bans are virtually ignored, while in others, such as the United States, the bans are 105 taken very seriously.

Why do people smoke when they know it is bad for their health? According to many researchers, smoking is one of the most difficult habits to break. Mark Twain, the American writer, once said, "To quit smoking is the look easiest thing I ever did; I ought to know because I've done it hundreds of times."

# a Vo

### Vocabulary

|    | variety             | rub               | tax            | ranure                    |
|----|---------------------|-------------------|----------------|---------------------------|
|    | occupied            | wound             | label          | inhale                    |
|    | lung                | rites             | basically      | cultivate                 |
| 1. | It was so cold tha  | t I had to        |                | _ my hands together to    |
|    | warm them.          |                   |                |                           |
| 2. | In the south, they  | can grow a        |                | of vegetables, not just   |
|    | the few we can      |                   | here.          |                           |
| 3. | Every religion has  | s different buria | al             |                           |
| 4. |                     | damage car        | n cause seriou | s breathing problems.     |
| 5. | The                 | on can            | ned food give  | s information about the   |
|    | ingredients in the  | food.             |                |                           |
| 6. | Tom seems unfrie    | ndly, but he's _  |                | a kind and generous       |
|    | person.             |                   |                |                           |
| 7. | When you            |                   | your chest sh  | ould expand.              |
| 8. | Our regular classi  | room was          |                | _ by another class, so we |
|    | had to go to a diff | erent room.       |                |                           |

| 9. Th | ne doctor put a | large bandage | on her leg |  |
|-------|-----------------|---------------|------------|--|
|-------|-----------------|---------------|------------|--|

10. The car cost \$10,000 plus \_\_\_\_\_\_.

# **b** Vocabulary

| 2 17 | Vocabulai       | ı y                  |                           |                       |
|------|-----------------|----------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|
|      | tax<br>honor    |                      | encountered<br>widespread |                       |
|      | leading         | post-op              | complication              | toxic                 |
| 1.   | On her walk     | in the woods, she    |                           | a large bear.         |
| 2.   | The youngest    | t child in a family  | often has to wear         |                       |
|      | clothes.        |                      |                           |                       |
| 3.   | Which countr    | ry is the            | produce                   | r of rice?            |
| 4.   | The first airpl | lane that the Wrig   | ht brothers built was     | s a                   |
|      |                 | It couldn            | 't get off the ground     |                       |
|      | •               |                      | _ to be given an awa      |                       |
| 6.   | A person with   | ı                    | problems has t            | rouble breathing.     |
| 7.   | A week after    | surgery, he went t   | o his doctor for a        |                       |
|      | examination.    |                      |                           |                       |
| 8.   | The only        |                      | we had on our trip v      | vas not being able to |
|      | find our hotel  | l                    |                           |                       |
| 9.   | Any househo     | ld cleaners that are | e                         | must be kept out of   |
|      | reach of child  | ren.                 |                           |                       |
| 10.  | Destruction fr  | om the storm was     | 8                         | _; few houses were    |

left undamaged.

# Vocabulary Review: Antonyms

| Match the antonyms.  |   |  |
|--|---|--|
| 1. deprive   | a. degrade  |  |
| 2. boost   | b. provide  |  |
| 3. enhance   | c. wealth   |  |
| 4. volatile  | d. foreign  |  |
| 5. poverty   | e. enter  |  |
| 6. discord   | f. unimportant  |  |
| 7. native  | g. lower  |  |
| 8. vital   | h. accurate   |  |
| 9. potential   | i. agreement  |  |
| 10. withdraw   | j. calm   |  |
|  | k. achieve  |  |
|  | l. impossible   |  |
| 1. The tobacco   | plant is native to Asia.  e Americans used tobacco in their religious rites.      |  |
| 3. The Spanish explorers learned to smoke tobacco, while the |   |  |
| Portuguese used tobacco as snuff.                            |   |  |
| O  | sn't banned until the 1900s.  |  |
|  | always known that smoking is bad for their health.                                |  |
| _  | 20th century, there was already evidence of a link                                |  |
|  | oking and lung cancer.  |  |
|  | industry can no longer pay filmmakers to show                                     |  |
|  | king in their movies.   |  |
| • •  | ave to smoke yourself to be affected by cigarette                                 |  |
| 9. Parents who   | smoke are more likely to have children who smoke.                                 |  |
|  | of smokers are more likely to have respiratory an are the children of nonsmokers. |  |



### Comprehension Questions

- 1. What are some of the different ways in which people have used the tobacco plant?
- 2. What is snuff?
- 3. Why did the Spanish and Portuguese explorers use tobacco differently?
- 4. Where was smoking banned in the 17th century?
- 5. Why didn't governments enforce the smoking ban in the 17th century?
- 6. How did the U.S. government try to discourage smoking in the 1960s?
- 7. What did the tobacco industry do to encourage people to smoke?
- 8. What is secondhand smoke?
- 9. What effect can smoking have on nonsmokers?
- 10. In addition to causing lung cancer, what other effects can smoking have on a person's health?
- 11. What has the government of Bhutan done to discourage people from smoking?

# f

### Reading Strategy: Distinguishing Facts and Opinions

| laentify each staten | ient below as a fact or an opinion. Write <b>Fact</b> or <b>Opinion</b> on th |
|----------------------|---|
| line.                |   |
| - 1967<br>1967       | 1. Today, tobacco is grown in roughly 120 countries.                          |
|                      | 2. Some people think tobacco can cure toothaches.                             |
|                      | 3. Smoking causes lung cancer.  |
|                      | 4. People should quit smoking.  |
|                      | 5. It's important for governments to enforce smoking                          |
|                      | bans.   |
|                      | 6. Some of the chemicals in tobacco are toxic.                                |
| 91                   | 7. If you have children, you shouldn't smoke.                                 |
|                      | 8. If you smoke at home, your children are more likely                        |
|                      | to develop breathing problems.  |



### Vocabulary Expansion: The Prefix mis-

The prefix *mis*- can be added to the beginning of some words to make the meaning negative.

Choose verbs from the list below to complete the sentences that follow. Make any necessary changes to the tense and form of the verbs.

|    |                      |                   | mislead<br>misunderstand |                  |  |
|----|----------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|------------------|--|
| 1. | How often do you     |                   | your keys?               | 2                |  |
| 2. | Did you              | a lot             | when you were a chi      | ld?              |  |
| 3. | If your bank         |                   | your account balance,    | , what would you |  |
|    | do?                  |                   |                          |                  |  |
| 4. | What is likely to ha | appen to people   | who                      | their            |  |
|    | businesses?          |                   |                          |                  |  |
| 5. | Many arguments s     | tart simply beca  | use people               | each             |  |
|    | other.               |                   |                          |                  |  |
| 6. | She                  | him by sa         | aying she enjoyed coo    | king when she    |  |
|    | didn't.              |                   |                          |                  |  |
| 7. | The newspaper        |                   | _ the name of the co     | mpany but        |  |
|    | corrected its mistal | ke the next day.  |                          |                  |  |
| 8. | I thought it was go  | ing to rain today | y, but I must have       |                  |  |
|    | the weather forecas  | st in the newspa  | per.                     | -                |  |



### Grammar Review: Prepositions

Write the correct preposition on the line.

| The use of tobacco (1) cigarettes didn't become popular until             |
|---|
| late in the 19th century. Thanks (2) an effective advertising cam-        |
| paign (3) the 1880s, cigarette smoking became widespread. Back            |
| then, most people thought that cigarettes helped to relieve tension; they |
| didn't believe that cigarettes were harmful (4) a person's health.        |
| (5) the 20th century, however, doctors began seeing an increasing         |
| number (6) cases of lung cancer, and (7) 1950 researchers in              |
| England reported the first evidence showing a link between smoking and    |

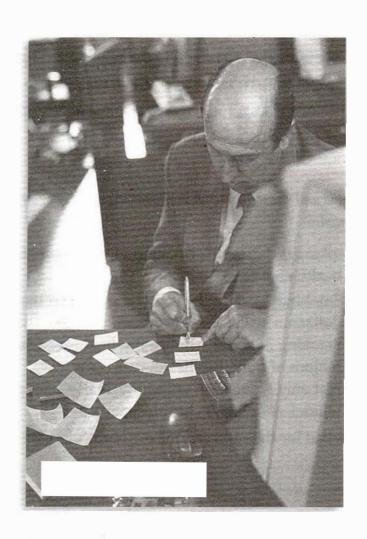
| lung cancer. Fourteen years later, (8) 1964, the U.S. Surgeon  |
|--|
| General announced that smoking causes lung cancer. Soon after that, the  |
| first warning labels appeared (9) cigarette packages, and cigarette  |
| advertisements were banned (10) television and radio (11)  |
| England and the United States. The tobacco industry responded  |
| (12) paying filmmakers to show actors and actresses smoking  |
| (13) their movies. Fearing that the health warnings would  |
| encourage people to stop smoking, cigarette makers also increased the  |
| amount of nicotine (14) cigarettes to make them more addictive.  |
|  |
| Sentence Combining   |
| Read the example and the model combinations below. Then rewrite sentences 1 and 2 following the models.                        |
| <i>Example:</i> Smoking is unhealthy. It also costs governments billions of dollars in health-care costs.                      |
| Models: a. Smoking is unhealthy, and it costs governments billions of  |
| dollars in health-care costs.  |
| <ul> <li>b. Smoking not only is unhealthy, but also costs governments<br/>billions of dollars in health-care costs.</li> </ul> |
| c. Not only is smoking unhealthy; it also costs governments  |
| billions of dollars in health-care costs.  |
| 1. Smoking is bad for the smoker. It also is harmful to the people nearby.   |
| a  |
| b  |
| C  |
| 2. The children of smokers are more likely to have health problems. They also have respiratory problems more often.            |
| a  |
| b  |
| С  |
| j Writing  |
| Advertisements can be very powerful. Write a magazine or television  |
| <i>J</i> 1   |

advertisement against smoking. Try to make it interesting to young adults.

When you finish, share your ad with your classmates and discuss it.

# Memory

lesson 2



### **Before You Read**

- 1. Do you think you have a good memory? Why or why not?
- 2. What things do you often forget? What things are easy for you to remember?
- 3. What is your oldest memory?



### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. Scientists are still trying to **figure out** exactly what memory is.
- 2. We do know that a memory is not just one thing stored somewhere in the brain. Instead, a memory is made up of **bits** and pieces of information stored all over the brain.
- 3. Ask questions when you are trying to learn new information to be **certain** that you understand it accurately.
- 4. If you **come across** a new word, make a picture in your mind of the word and the thing it represents.

# 2

# Memory



When you say that someone has a good memory, what exactly do you mean? Are you saying that the person has fast <u>recall</u> or that she or he <u>absorbs</u> information quickly? Or maybe you just mean that the person remembers a lot about her or his childhood. The truth is that it is difficult to say exactly what memory is. Even scientists who have been studying memory for decades say that they are still trying to <u>figure out</u> exactly what it is. We do know that a <u>particular</u> memory

is not just one thing stored somewhere in the brain.

Instead, a memory is made up of <u>bits</u> and pieces of information stored all over the brain. Perhaps, then, the best way to describe memory is to say that it is a process—a process of recording, storing, and <u>retrieving</u>

information. It is this process that allows us to <u>retain</u> memories of past events as well as to remember an unlimited number of facts.

In order for a piece of information to be remembered, it must first be recorded in the brain. And

ability to call back something remembered takes in

specific

small amounts

bringing back keep



- to record something in the brain, you have to really notice it or register it, using one or more of your five senses—sight, hearing, touch, taste, and smell. Practice and repetition can then help to strengthen the pieces that make up your memory of that information.
  - Memory can be negatively affected by a number of things. Poor nutrition and <u>depression</u> can affect a person's ability to retain information. **Excessive** alcohol use can also **impair** memory and cause permanent damage to the brain over the long term. A **vision** or bearing impairment may affect a person's ability to

hearing impairment may affect a person's ability to notice certain things, <u>thus</u> making it harder to record information in the brain.

When people talk about memory, they often refer to short-term memory and long-term memory. If you want to call a store or an office that you don't call often, you look in the telephone book for the number. You dial the number, and then you forget it! You use your short-term memory to remember the number. Your short-term memory lasts about 30 seconds, or half a minute.

- 40 However, you don't need to look in the telephone book for your best friend's number, because you already know it. This number is in your long-term memory, which stores information about things you have learned and experienced through the years.
- Why do you forget things sometimes? The major reason for forgetting something is that you did not learn it well enough in the beginning. For example, if you meet some new people and right away forget their names, it is because you did not register the names when you heard them.

You can help yourself to remember better. Here are some ideas.

- 1. Move information from your short-term memory to your long-term memory. You can do this by practicing the new information. Say it out loud to yourself. Think about it.
- 2. After you learn something, study it again and again. Learn it more than you need to. This process is called overlearning. For example, when you

feelings of great sadness

for that reason

- learn new words, practice using them in sentences. Don't try to memorize words only from a list.
- 3. Make sure that you understand new information. It is difficult to remember something that you don't **comprehend**. Ask questions when you are trying to learn new information to be **certain** that you understand it accurately.
- 4. Get rid of any **distractions** in the room where you are studying. Do not listen to music or watch television while you are studying. You will remember better if you concentrate on just one thing at a time.
- 5. Try to connect new information with something that you already know. For example, when you learn the name of a new kind of food, think of a similar kind of food that you are already familiar with.
- 6. Divide new information into several sections (about five or six). Learn one section at a time, stopping for a few minutes between sections. Don't sit down and try to learn a very large amount of new information all at once.
- 7. Use **visualization techniques** when you are learning new information. For example, if you **come across** a new word, make a picture in your mind of the word and the thing it represents. This **mental** picture will help you remember that word the next time you see or hear it.
- 8. Think of word clues to help you remember information. One helpful kind of word clue is an acronym. An acronym is an expression formed from the first letters of a group of words. For example, many American schoolchildren learn the names of the Great Lakes in North America by remembering the word *homes*. *Homes* is an acronym that comes from the names of the Great Lakes: *Huron, Ontario, Michigan, Erie, Superior*.
- 9. Relax when you study! Try to enjoy yourself. You are learning new things every minute. You will remember better if you are happy and relaxed.



Instagram:@IELTS\_Matters

### **a** Vocabulary

|     | recall   | absorb           | fig       | ure out           | particular          |
|-----|--|------------------|-----------|-------------------|---------------------|
|     | bits   |                  |           | tain              | 1                   |
|     | depression   | excessive        | im        | paired            | vision              |
| 1.  | 1. A towel can water, but a piece of metal canno         |                  |           |                   |                     |
| 2.  | 2. If you eat an amount of food, you will gain weight    |                  |           |                   | u will gain weight. |
| 3.  | I wonder why the   | ere are          |           | of paper          | all over the floor. |
| 4.  | 4. No other shirts would please him; he wanted only that |                  |           |                   |                     |
|     |  | shirt.           |           |                   |                     |
| 5.  | The company trie   | d to             |           | _ all of its en   | nployees, but it    |
|     | finally had to let s                                     | several people l | leave.    |                   |                     |
| 6.  | Lack of interest in                                      | things and fee   | lings of  | sadness are s     | igns of             |
|     |  |                  |           |                   |                     |
| 7.  | If you throw a bal                                       | l to my dog, he  | will rur  | after it and      |                     |
|     |  | it.              |           |                   |                     |
| 8.  | After the fifth  |                  | , he w    | as able to say    | the poem without    |
|     | looking at his boo                                       | k.               |           |                   |                     |
| 9.  | I can't  | if I'n           | n suppos  | ed to be there    | e at 3 or 4.        |
| 10. | 10. If you have vision, you have to wear glasses who     |                  |           | vear glasses when |                     |
|     | you drive a car.   |                  |           |                   |                     |
| 11. | Spending a lot of  | time in front of | a compu   | iter could ha     | rm your             |
|     |  |                  |           |                   | ×                   |
| 12. | How do I   | t                | ne area o | f a triangle?     |                     |
|     |  |                  |           |                   |                     |
| b   | Vocabulary   |                  |           |                   |                     |
|     | dial   | comprehend       | 1         | ecord             | excessive           |
|     | all at once  | visualize        | t         | echnique          | came across         |
|     | mental   | certain          |           | hus               | distracting         |
| 1.  | So many things ha  | ppened           |           | that w            | e didn't know wha   |
|     | to do first.   |                  |           |                   |                     |
| 2.  | I used a videotape                                       | to               |           | the graduat       | ion ceremony.       |

| 3.   | Could you please stop to   | alking for a minute. You're me.                     |
|------|----------------------------|---|
|      |                            | why anyone would want to live                       |
|      | in Antarctica for a whole  | e year.   |
| 5.   | She's not sure she'll be h | ere today, but she's she'll                         |
|      | get here tomorrow.         |   |
| 6.   | Can you                    | the house you would like to live in                 |
|      | someday?                   |   |
| 7.   | What do you do when y      | ou the wrong telephone                              |
|      | number?                    |   |
| 8.   | Do you have a good         | for remembering phone                               |
|      | numbers?                   |   |
| 9.   | I ar                       | n interesting article while I was doing research on |
|      | the Internet.              |   |
| 10.  | Reading and writing are    | activities.   |
| 11.  | She knew all the answers   | s to the exam questions;, she                       |
|      | got an A.                  |   |
| Sec. | 1                          |   |
| C    | Vocabulary Review:         | Synonyms  |
|      |                            |   |
| Mat  | ch the synonyms.           | *.  |
|      | 1. suitable                | a. hopeful  |
|      | 2. attempt                 | b. exceptionally                                    |
|      | 3. optimistic              | c. appropriate                                      |
|      | 4. primarily               | d. fair   |
|      | 5. diverse                 | e. try  |
|      | 6. traits                  | f. think  |
|      | 7. impact                  | g. varied   |
|      | 8. extraordinarily         | h. sharp  |
|      | 9. impartial               | i. affect   |
|      | 10. ponder                 | j. mainly   |
|      |                            | k. achieve  |
|      |                            | l. characteristics                                  |

### d

### Comprehension Check: Multiple Choice

Circle the letter of the best answer.

- 1. A memory is stored in your brain \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. in one place
  - b. in many different places
  - c. in a couple of places
- 2. To record something in your memory, you have to first \_\_\_\_\_
  - a. retrieve it
  - b. retain it
  - c. register it
- 3. Repetition can help to \_\_\_\_\_ a memory.
  - a. lose
- b. impair
  - c. strengthen
- 4. \_\_\_\_ can impair memory.
  - a. Drinking alcohol
  - b. Using the telephone
  - c. Repeating things
- 5. Short-term memory lasts about \_\_\_\_\_
  - a. 3 seconds
  - b. 30 seconds
  - c. half an hour
- 6. When you learn something, you move it into \_\_\_\_\_
  - a. short-term memory
  - b. long-term memory
  - c. both short-term and long-term memory
- 7. Saying something out loud helps you \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. hold it in short-term memory
  - b. remember it
  - c. retrieve it
- 8. Distractions can \_\_\_\_\_
  - a. prevent you from concentrating
  - b. help you retain information
  - c. help you visualize

- 9. It's not a good idea to try to learn a lot of new things \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. in sections
  - b. over time
  - c. all at once
- 10. When you visualize something, you \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a. look for it
  - b. make a mental picture of it
  - c. ask questions to make certain you understood correctly

### **e** Comprehension Questions

- 1. Where are memories stored in the brain?
- 2. What are memories made up of?
- 3. What are the three steps in the memory process?
- 4. What are some things that can harm memory?
- 5. What is the difference between short-term memory and long-term memory?
- 6. What is overlearning?
- 7. What shouldn't you do when you study?
- 8. How can an acronym help you retrieve information?



### Reading Strategy: Identifying Cause and Effect

Complete the chart below with the missing effects.

| Cause   | Effect |
|---|--------|
| Practice and repetition                         |        |
| Depression and malnutrition                     |        |
| Overlearning information                        |        |
| Distractions in the room where you are studying |        |
| Making a mental picture of a new word           | 5      |



### Vocabulary Expansion: Word Forms

Choose the right word form for each sentence below.

|    | Verb       | Noun          | Adjective              | Adverb                             |
|----|------------|---------------|------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. | visualize  | visualization | visual                 | visually                           |
| 2. | distract   | distraction   | distracted             | distractedly                       |
| 3. | comprehend | comprehension | comprehensive          | comprehensively                    |
| 4. | absorb     | absorption    | absorbent              |                                    |
| 5. | retrieve   | retrieval     |                        |                                    |
| 6. |            | excess        | excessive              | excessively                        |
| 7. | impair     | impairment    | impaired               |                                    |
| 8. | repeat     | repetition    | repetitive repetitious | repetitively                       |
| 9. | depress    | depression    | depressed              | wante in the state of the state of |

| 1. | Can you yourself flying an airplane?                                |
|----|---|
| 2. | Each time the telephone rings, it everyone.                         |
| 3. | Your of the language has increased tremendously.                    |
| 4. | Young children new information at an incredible rate.               |
| 5. | They used a fishing pole to her ring from the bottom                |
|    | of the lake.  |
| 6. | I sometimes get a headache when I'm with my best friend because she |
|    | talks   |
| 7. | Drinking alcohol can a person's ability to drive.                   |
| 8. | His speech was too; he just kept saying the same                    |
|    | thing over and over again.  |
| 9. | The lack of sunlight in the winter seems to him.                    |



#### Grammar Review: Noun Substitutes

Read each sentence or pair of sentences and study the pronoun in **bold** print. Circle the noun or noun phrase that each pronoun replaces.

- 1. Practice the new information. Say it out loud to yourself.
- 2. This process is called overlearning. For example, when you learn new words, practice using them in sentences.
- 3. It is difficult to remember something that you don't comprehend. Ask questions when you are trying to learn new information to be certain that you understand it accurately.
- 4. If you come across a new word, make a picture in your mind of the word and the thing it represents.
- 5. The major reason for forgetting something is that you did not learn it well enough in the beginning. For example, if you meet some new people and right away forget their names, it is because you did not register the names when you heard them.
- 6. You don't need to look in the telephone book for your best friend's number, because you already know it. This number is in your long-term memory.



#### Sentence Combining

Read the example and the model combinations below. Then rewrite sentences 1 and 2 following the models.

Memory is difficult to define. It isn't just one thing.

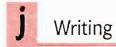
Models:

- a. Memory is difficult to define because it isn't just one thing.
- b. Memory, which isn't just one thing, is difficult to define.
- c. Because memory isn't just one thing, it's difficult to define.
- 1. Excessive alcohol use is bad for your health. It can cause permanent brain damage.

| a |  |
|---|--|
|   |  |
| D |  |
|   |  |



| 2. | Short-term memory is very useful. It holds information while you are |
|----|--|
|    | using it.  |
|    | a  |
|    | b  |
|    | C  |
|    |  |

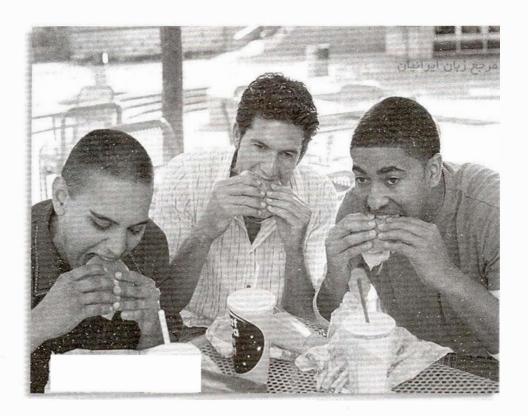


Think about one of your best memories. Describe it in a paragraph for your classmates to read.

### lesson

# 3

## Obesity: The New Epidemic



### Before You Read

- 1. What were some of the most serious health problems in the past?
- 2. What are some of the most serious health problems today?
- 3. What connection can you make between the photograph and the topic of health problems?



#### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. The most serious health problem in the world used to be **infectious** diseases such as typhoid fever and influenza (flu).
- 2. One cause of the problem is the **sedentary** lifestyle that many people in the 21st century are leading. Getting around by car and working at a desk don't demand much physical activity.
- 3. The fast-food industry spends over \$33 billion a year to attract customers. Agencies created to educate people about healthy eating have only a **fraction** of that amount of money.

### Obesity: The New Epidemic

(8)

**ep-i-dem-ic** /  $\epsilon$ pə'dɛmɪk/ n. a disease that spreads quickly among many people: There are  $\epsilon$  epidemics of influenza nearly every winter.

The most serious health problem in the world used to be **infectious** diseases such as typhoid fever, influenza (flu), and bubonic plague. In the 14th century, for example, an epidemic of bubonic plague killed

- roughly one-third of the population of Asia and about half of the population of Europe. A flu epidemic in 1918 killed millions of people around the world. Today, however, vaccines and antibiotics have prevented the spread of many serious diseases. In fact, in many parts
- of the world today, infectious diseases are no longer considered to be the most serious health problem.

  According to Dr. Julie Gerberding, **director** of the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) in the United States, the number one health problem in the
- 15 United States is the new epidemic of **obesity**.



an indicator

What does it mean to be obese? Most doctors and researchers use the body mass <u>index</u>, or BMI, to determine whether someone is overweight or obese. The BMI equals a person's weight in kilograms divided by the square of the person's height in meters. A normal BMI is between 18.5 and 24.9. A person with a body mass index of 25.0 to 29.9 is considered to be overweight, while a person with a BMI of 30 or above is said to be obese. It is estimated that roughly 51 percent of the adults in the United States and Canada are either overweight or obese. Worldwide, an estimated 22

What is causing the epidemic of obesity? One
obvious contributing factor is the **sedentary** lifestyle
that many people in the 21st century are leading.
Getting around by car and working at a desk don't
demand much physical activity. "Physical activity used
to be what people had to do to survive," says Dr. David
Katz, **associate** clinical professor of public health at Yale
University. "Now we speak of it as something we have
to work into our day."

million children under the age of five are believed to

be overweight.

A second cause of the obesity epidemic is an increase in the availability and consumption of **junk** food. The

Centers for Disease Control and Prevention defines junk foods as "foods which **provide calories** primarily through fats or added sugars and have **minimal** amounts of vitamins and minerals." Studies have shown that people are consuming **substantially** more calories daily than they used to, and they are consuming many of those calories outside of **regular** meals. **In other words**, people are snacking, or eating between meals, a lot more than they used to, and those snacks often consist of junk food.

The **skyrocketing** popularity of fast-food restaurants over the past 30 years has also contributed to the obesity epidemic. The goal of most fast-food restaurants is to make high profits by producing meals cheaply and efficiently, with little concern for the nutritional content of the food. **Consequently**, much of the food served in

units of energy produced by food very small a lot

increasing rapidly

as a result

50

fast-food restaurants is high in saturated fats, sodium, and sugar. The "great taste" of the food comes from artificial **flavorings** created in science laboratories. For example, roughly 50 artificial ingredients are used to make the strawberry milkshake sold in one popular fast-food restaurant. High-quality meat has been replaced by lower-quality meat that is full of preservatives to make it taste good. While the nutritional content of much fast food is declining, the serving sizes have been getting larger, encouraging people to consume more calories.

A study in 2004 provided the first scientific evidence of a link between eating fast food regularly and obesity and obesity-related diseases. The study followed 3,000 young people between the ages of 18 and 30 for 15 years. Researchers found that people who ate a fast-food meal at least twice a week were 10 pounds or more heavier than those who ate fast food less than once a week. According to Mark Pereira, who worked on the study, "People really should be taking a hard look at their diet. One simple change that people could make is reducing their frequency of going to fast-food restaurants and eating more at home."

The fast-food industry spends over \$33 billion a year to attract customers to its restaurants. Restaurants <u>lure</u> children by offering toys, playgrounds, entertainment, and a party atmosphere. Adults are attracted by the fast service and the predictability of both the food and the environment. Agencies created to educate people about healthy eating have only a **fraction** of that amount of money with which to get their message across.

In 2001, the U.S. Surgeon General reported that obesity can be linked to roughly 300,000 deaths and \$117 billion in health-care costs a year. Among the health problems caused by obesity are respiratory difficulties, deterioration of bones and muscles, high blood pressure, and skin problems. The more lifethreatening problems include heart disease, type 2 diabetes, and certain types of cancer. Clearly, something must be done to stop this new epidemic.

attract with promises; entice

Instagram:@IELTS\_Matters

| • |            |   |
|---|------------|---|
| a | Vocabulary | J |
|   |            |   |

|         | infected  | lure               | flavor            | director                 |  |
|---------|---|--------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|--|
|         | obesity   |                    |                   |                          |  |
|         | sedentary   |                    |                   | provide                  |  |
| 1.      | A computer prog   | grammer has a $\_$ |                   | job, but a farmer        |  |
|         | does not.   |                    |                   |                          |  |
| 2.      | What documents  | do you have to     |                   | when you enter           |  |
|         | another country?  | •                  |                   |                          |  |
| 3.      | 3. What is the body mass?   |                    |                   |                          |  |
| 4.      | 4. The head of an agency is sometimes called its                      |                    |                   |                          |  |
| 5.      | 5. If you don't clean a cut, it could become                          |                    |                   |                          |  |
| 6.      | 6. If you are just a little bit, it's not a serious problem           |                    |                   |                          |  |
|         | though you should probably lose the extra weight as soon as possible. |                    |                   |                          |  |
| 7.      | 7. My car is a piece of; it doesn't run well at all.                  |                    |                   |                          |  |
| 8.      | 8. To prevent cavities, you should brush your teeth                   |                    |                   |                          |  |
| 9.      | 9 is a growing problem among both children and                        |                    |                   | both children and        |  |
| adults. |   |                    |                   |                          |  |
| 10.     | 0. I from the weight shown on the scale that I need                   |                    |                   | he scale that I needed   |  |
|         | to go on diet.  |                    |                   |                          |  |
|         |   |                    |                   |                          |  |
| b       | Vocabulary  |                    |                   |                          |  |
|         | calories  | minimal            | substantial       | in other words           |  |
|         | skyrocketed   | flavor             | consequently      | deteriorate              |  |
|         | lure  | fraction           | associate         | life-threatening         |  |
| 1.      | I ate a   | of the             | amount of pizza   | that he ate.             |  |
| 2.      | Cream contains n  | nore               | than m            | ilk.                     |  |
| 3.      | She eats fast food  | regularly          | , s               | she's a fast-food junkie |  |
| 4.      | In just one week,   | the price of eggs  | 5                 | from \$2.00 to           |  |
|         | \$8.00.   |                    |                   |                          |  |
| 5.      | There is a  | an                 | nount of sugar in | the tea. I don't think   |  |
|         | you will even not   | rice it.           |                   |                          |  |
| 6.      | I brush my teeth  | regularly          | , I l             | have no cavities.        |  |

| 7.                                  | She used a piece of m  | neat to                 | her dog back into the         |
|-------------------------------------|--|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
|                                     | house.   |                         |                               |
| 8. What is your favorite ice cream? |  |                         | ?                             |
| 9.                                  | 9. When he stopped drinking soda and eating junk food, he lost 20 kilos. |                         |                               |
|                                     | That's a   | amount of w             | eight.                        |
| 10.                                 | 0. Some fast food is so full of preservatives that it won't              |                         |                               |
| 11.                                 | My   | and I run the busi      | ness together.                |
| 12.                                 | The  | problems he was         | experiencing were a direct    |
|                                     | result of obesity.   |                         |                               |
|                                     | _  |                         |                               |
| C                                   | Vocabulary Revie   | w. Definitions          | 90                            |
|                                     | rocabalary nevic   | W. Definitions          |                               |
| Ma                                  | tch the words with their   | definitions.            |                               |
| _                                   | 1. all at once   | a. easily damaged       |                               |
| _                                   | 2. retain  | b. dream                |                               |
| _                                   | 3. fragile   | c. send                 |                               |
|                                     | 4. exploit   | d. watch carefully o    | over time                     |
| _                                   | 5. fantasy   | e. feeling of togethe   | erness                        |
| _                                   | 6. monitor   | f. not open to visit    | ors                           |
| _                                   | 7. off-limits  | g. keep; hold on to     |                               |
|                                     | 8. transmit  | h. suddenly             |                               |
|                                     |  | i. staff                |                               |
|                                     |  | j. take advantage o     | of; treat unfairly            |
|                                     |  |                         |                               |
| a                                   | Comprehension (  | Check: True/False/No    | ot Enough Information         |
|                                     | 1 Infactions disc  |                         | a muchlam to day, than in the |
|                                     |  | ases are a more senou   | s problem today than in the   |
|                                     | past.  | hady mass inday         |                               |
|                                     |  | body mass index.        | an turk atk an anna anna in   |
|                                     |  | e the bivil to determin | ne whether someone is         |
|                                     | underweight.   | our DMT reasonable      | lm ann maight amha            |
|                                     |  |                         | know your weight only.        |
|                                     |  | obese people in the w   | vorld will double in the next |
|                                     | 10 years.  |                         |                               |

survive.

5. Physical activity used to be what people had to do to

| 6. People eat a lot more junk food today than they did   |
|--|
| 20 years ago.  |
| 7. In 2001, the U.S. Surgeon General reported that   |
| obesity can be linked to roughly 300,000 deaths a year.  |
| 8. People should be looking hard at their diet.  |
| o. Teople should be looking hard at their diet.  |
| 8 Vocabulary Expansion: Collocations   |
| Match the verbs and nouns you can use together. Write the number of one or more verbs next to each noun. |
| Verbs Nouns  |
| 1. absorb a. information   |
| 2. inhale b. surgery   |
| 3. lead c. someone's name  |
| 4. memorize d. calories  |
| 5. dial e. water   |
| 6. perform f. a horse  |
| 7. recall g. a list of words   |
| 8. consume h. smoke  |
| i. a sedentary lifestyle   |
| j. a number  |
| k. fuel  |
| l. a task  |
|  |
| Grammar Review: Transition Words   |
| Choose a transition word from the list to complete each sentence below.                                  |
| nevertheless in spite of even though   |
| in fact in other words consequently  |
| 1. Obesity is becoming a serious problem among young children.   |
| , more than 22 million children are now thought to   |
| be overweight.   |
| 2. People need to consume fewer calories and engage in more physical                                     |
| activity, they need to eat less and exercise more.   |
| 3. People know that a lot of fast food is very unhealthy   |
| they still want to eat it  |

| 4.  | the high amount of sodium and fat in fast food, |       |  |                     |                     |
|-----|---|-------|--|---------------------|---------------------|
|     | many p  | peoj  | ole eat it several times a we                                | ek.                 |                     |
| 5.  | Some p  | eop   | ole eat a lot of fast food                                   | 1                   | they know it isn't  |
|     | good fo   | or tl | nem.   |                     |                     |
| 6.  | Restau  | ran   | ts are serving larger and lar                                | ger portions of foo | od.                 |
|     |   |       | , customers are co   | onsuming more ca    | lories than they    |
|     | used to   | ).    |  |                     |                     |
| •   |   |       |  |                     |                     |
| İ   | Sent  | en    | ce Combining   |                     |                     |
|     | d the exa                                       |       | le and the model combinations<br>odels.                      | below. Then rewrite | e sentences 1 and 2 |
| Exa | imple:  |       | ast-food companies lure chil<br>ys and a party atmosphere.   |                     | urants. They offer  |
| Mod | dels:   | a.    | Fast-food companies lure offering toys and a party a         |                     | estaurants by       |
|     |   | b.    | By offering toys and a part<br>lure children to their restar |                     | t-food companies    |
|     |   | c.    | To lure children to their restoys and a party atmosphe       |                     | d companies offer   |
|     | Fast-food<br>efficientl                         |       | ompanies make high profits                                   | . They produce me   | eals cheaply and    |
| -   | a   |       |  |                     |                     |
| b   | )   |       |  |                     |                     |
|     | Doctors on ass ind                              |       | determine whether someon                                     | ne is overweight. I | They use the body   |
| а   | l   |       |  |                     |                     |
| b   | )   |       |  |                     |                     |
| C   |   |       |  |                     |                     |
| j   | Writi   | ing   | _  |                     |                     |



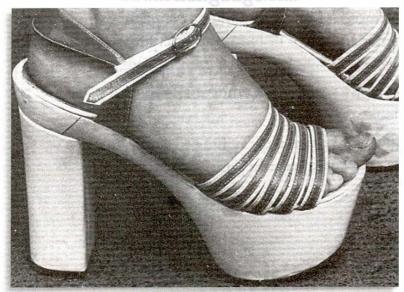
Think about your eating habits and decide whether you have good eating habits or poor eating habits. Then explain in writing why you think so. Include details and examples in your writing.

### Can Fashion Be Hazardous to Your Health?

lesson

4

www.irl.anguage.com



#### Before You Read

- 1. How might the shoes in the photo be harmful to a person's health?
- 2. What are some other examples of popular clothes that are either uncomfortable or dangerous to wear?
- 3. What are some common things that men and women do to look more attractive?

#### **Context Clues**

The words in **bold** print below are from this lesson. Use context clues to guess what each word means.

- 1. Just because something is popular, or fashionable, doesn't mean that it is going to be good for your health.
- 2. History is full of examples of unhealthy things people have been willing to do in the name of fashion, and today there are still many people who risk their health just to be **in style**.
- 3. In the 16th century, many women put white **makeup** on their faces to be fashionable.
- 4. At other times in history, women were willing to drink small amounts of the poison arsenic because it made them look fashionably **pale**.

# Can Fashion Be Hazardous to Your Health?

[6]

Just because something is popular, or fashionable, doesn't mean that it is going to be good for your health. History is full of examples of unhealthy things people have been willing to do in the name of fashion, and today there are still many people who risk their health just to be in style.

Many people are familiar with the neck ring custom of the Padaung people of Myanmar. At about age five, young girls begin to wear their first rings, which can weigh as much as 3 kilograms; over time, more rings are added. The weight of the rings pushes down the young girl's collarbone and upper ribs, making the neck appear to be very long. Unfortunately, the rings also cause the muscles of the neck to become so **weak** that they can no longer hold up the head. If the neck

rings were removed, the woman would not be able to sit or stand up.

The ancient Chinese practice of foot binding is another example of beauty at the price of health. This very painful procedure began when a young girl was between the ages of three and six. During the procedure, the four smaller toes on each foot were broken and turned under, and the feet were wrapped tightly with a bandage. Each day, the bandage was tightened a little more to make the foot smaller and smaller. After several years, the child's feet were just 8 to 10 centimeters long, making it impossible for her to walk naturally. The procedure itself was hazardous, with perhaps as many as 10 percent of the girls dying from infection or circulation problems caused by the tight bandages.

While the binding of feet might seem **absurd** to us today, women continue to do damage to their feet in the name of beauty. Wearing high heels, for example,

shortens the muscles of the lower leg and can cause the back to <u>arch</u> unnaturally. This can lead to serious back problems and **nerve** damage. When <u>ultra-high</u> platform

shoes were popular in Japan, police officials **accused** them of causing many car accidents. They said that the thick **soles** of the shoes slowed the response time of drivers, especially when they had to **brake** in

an emergency.

50 fashionably pale.

Cosmetics have been in use for thousands of years, and while many types of cosmetics are harmless, there are some that can be dangerous <u>indeed</u>. In the 16th century, for example, white skin was the <u>ideal</u>, and many women put white **makeup** on their faces to be in style. Unfortunately, the makeup was made with the poisonous metals lead and mercury. Used over a long period of time, the makeup could eventually remove layers of skin, cause teeth to fall out, and sometimes poison people, leading to death. At other times in history, women were willing to drink small amounts of the poison arsenic because it made them look

tying tightly

method (for doing something)

covered

curve extremely; very

bottoms stop or slow down

truly goal; idea of perfection



The popularity of corsets in Europe in the 16th century provided another opportunity for women to exchange health for beauty. A corset is a tight-fitting piece of clothing that women wore to change the shape of their body. Made of steel, leather, and bone, corsets were supposed to provide every woman with the tiny waist that was so fashionable at the time. Unfortunately, corsets were also known to break ribs, puncture lungs, cause indigestion, and bring on shortness of breath. In 60 fact, when corsets became popular again in the 19th century, a new type of furniture known as a fainting couch became popular as well. A fainting couch looked like a narrow bed, but it was placed in sitting rooms and other public places. At a time when women 65 frequently <u>fainted</u> because of their tight-fitting corsets, it was useful to have a convenient place for them to lie down.

middle section of a person's body

passed out; lost consciousness easy to use or get to

While corsets are not fashionable today, there is no shortage of hazardous things that people are willing to 70 do to be in style. In some parts of the world, people are willing to pay for a procedure known as leg stretching just to become 8 centimeters taller. This procedure involves breaking the leg bones and then slowly, over a period of months, stretching the legs. The risks include 75 nerve damage, bones becoming too weak to support the body, and uneven legs. Lying out in the sun to change the color of your skin is still a popular activity in many parts of the world, despite the fact that too much sun can cause skin cancer. Body piercing has been a custom 80 in many parts of the world for centuries, but now we know about some of the health risks that go along with this fashion. Piercing the skin can cause infection, and piercing the tongue can cause gum damage and even broken teeth.

Throughout history, people have done extraordinary things to their bodies just to be fashionable. Pain, medical complications, and even the risk of death have not discouraged people from trying to become more beautiful.

85



### Vocabulary

|      | fashionable  | bind              | procedure              | bandage            |  |
|------|--|-------------------|------------------------|--------------------|--|
|      | absurd   |                   | nerves                 | ultra              |  |
|      | accused  | soles             | brake                  | weak               |  |
| 1.   | Has anyone ever  |                   | you of doing so        | mething you didn't |  |
|      | do?  |                   |                        | 6                  |  |
| 2.   | High divers often  | l                 | their backs who        | en they are up in  |  |
|      | the air.   |                   |                        |                    |  |
| 3.   | Corsets used to be                                       | 2                 | , but they no lo       | nger are.          |  |
| 4.   | What is the  | f                 | for getting a passport | in your country?   |  |
| 5.   | What can you use   | to                | several stick          | s together?        |  |
| 6.   | When you want to   | o stop a car, you | have to step on the    |                    |  |
|      |  |                   |                        |                    |  |
| 7.   | It seems   | to d              | o something that cou   | ld harm your       |  |
|      | health.  |                   |                        |                    |  |
| 8.   |  | carry messag      | es from your brain to  | different parts of |  |
|      | your body.   | ,                 |                        | •                  |  |
| 9.   | The skin on the _  |                   | of your feet is har    | der than the skin  |  |
|      | on your arms.  |                   |                        |                    |  |
| 0.   | A very light airpla                                      | ne is called an _ |                        | light.             |  |
|      |  |                   | otect a wound by kee   |                    |  |
| - 00 |  |                   | ,                      |                    |  |
| b    | Vocabulary   |                   |                        |                    |  |
|      | in style   | wrap              | indeed                 | ideal              |  |
|      | makeup   | pale              | waist                  | puncture           |  |
|      | faint  | convenient        | pierced                | weak               |  |
| 1.   | Another word for   | cosmetics is      |                        |                    |  |
| 2.   | 2. Everyone thought she was sick because she looked very |                   |                        |                    |  |
|      |  |                   |                        |                    |  |
| 3.   | If you think you as                                      | re going to       | , you                  | should sit down.   |  |

| 4.   | He   | the meat with a for   | k to see if it was cooked       |  |  |
|--|--|-----------------------|---------------------------------|--|--|
|  | completely.  |                       |                                 |  |  |
| 5.   | It costs a lot of money to                         | be                    | all of the time.                |  |  |
| 6.   | If you want to touch you                           | r toes with your leg  | s straight, you have to bend    |  |  |
|  | at the   |                       |                                 |  |  |
| 7.   | Different cultures have d                          | ifferent definitions  | of the                          |  |  |
|  | parent or the                                      | husband               | or wife.                        |  |  |
| 8.   | If you   | _ a tire on your bid  | cycle, all the air will escape. |  |  |
| 9.   | In some cultures, people                           |                       | _ a cloth around their head.    |  |  |
| 10.  | Did I have a good trip? _                          |                       | I did.                          |  |  |
| 11.  | Driving a car is more                              | t                     | nan taking a bus, but it is     |  |  |
|  | more wasteful too.                                 |                       |                                 |  |  |
| 12.  | Her knees felt                                     | , and she             | began to fail to the floor.     |  |  |
|  |  |                       |                                 |  |  |
| C  | Vocabulary Review:                                 | Odd One Out           |                                 |  |  |
|  |  |                       |                                 |  |  |
| Circ   | cle the word that doesn't fit i                    | n each group.         |                                 |  |  |
| 1. 6   | extremely, significantly, fo                       | olishly, dramatically | Y                               |  |  |
| 2. figure out, determine, identify, emit                                     |  |                       |                                 |  |  |
| 3. deteriorate, designate, worsen, degrade                                   |  |                       |                                 |  |  |
| 4. devote, impair, damage, harm  |  |                       |                                 |  |  |
| 5. absurd, strange, bizarre, regular<br>6. accuse, blame, encounter, suspect |  |                       |                                 |  |  |
|  | accelerate, brake, slow dov                        | •                     |                                 |  |  |
|  | catastrophe, drought, epid                         | •                     |                                 |  |  |
|  |  |                       |                                 |  |  |
| d  | Comprehension Che                                  | ck: True/False/No     | t Enough Information            |  |  |
|  |  |                       |                                 |  |  |
| -  | 1. Most fashionable t                              |                       |                                 |  |  |
|  |  |                       | rings frequently take them off. |  |  |
| -  | 3. Neck rings help the muscles to become stronger. |                       |                                 |  |  |
|  | 4. All Chinese wome                                | n had their feet bou  | ınd.                            |  |  |

- 5. The pain from foot binding lasted for only a short time.
  6. High heels aren't good for a person's back.
  7. Most cosmetics used to be poisonous.
  8. Only women used to wear corsets.
  9. Piercing the tongue is very painful.
  10. Leg stretching is a relatively pairless procedure.
- e Comprehension Questions
- 1. How can neck rings be dangerous to a person's health?
- 2. What health problems could foot binding cause?
- 3. What is unhealthy about wearing high heels?
- 4. Why is it dangerous to drive while you are wearing platform shoes?
- 5. Why did women in the 16th century want to have white skin?
- 6. Why did corsets become fashionable?
- 7. How could a corset damage a person's health?
- 8. What was the purpose of a fainting couch?
- 9. What are the health risks of leg stretching?
- 10. What other fashions may be hazardous to a person's health?



### Reading Strategy: Taking Notes in a Chart

Use the chart below to take notes on the information in the text on pages 234–236.

| Paragraph       | Main idea   | Important details  |
|-----------------|---|--|
| 2 (lines 7–17)  | The custom of wearing neck rings is dangerous to a person's health. | The rings push down the collarbone and upper ribs. The neck muscles become too weak to hold up the head. |
| 3 (lines 18–31) |   | 14   |
| 4 (lines 32–42) |   | .5.  |
| 5 (lines 43–50) |   | •  |
| 6 (lines 51–67) |   |  |



### Vocabulary Expansion: Word Forms

Choose the right word form for each sentence below.

|    | Verb      | Noun        | Adjective   | Adverb       |
|----|-----------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. |           | convenience | convenient  | conveniently |
| 2. | accuse    | accusation  | accusative  | accusatively |
| 3. | fashion   | fashion     | fashionable | fashionably  |
| 4. |           | absurdity   | absurd      | absurdly     |
| 5. | idealize  | ideal       | ideal       | ideally      |
| 6. | poison    | poison      | poisonous   |              |
| 7. | appear    | appearance  |             |              |
| 8. | circulate | circulation | circulatory |              |

| 1. | What time would it be for me to come over.               |
|----|--|
| 2. | Why might someone make a false?                          |
| 3. | Are you usually dressed?                                 |
| 4. | What is the biggest fashion around today?                |
| 5. | Why do a lot of peopletall, thin people?                 |
| 6. | How can parents keepaway from their children?            |
| 7. | What is the most absurd thing you have ever done to your |
|    | ?  |
| 8. | What effect can very cold weather have on your—?         |



### Grammar Review: Verb Tense

Complete the paragraph with the correct form of the verb to be.

| Cosmetics                        | in use for thousands of years, and   |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| while many types of cosmetics    | harmless, there                      |
| some that can                    | be dangerous indeed. In the 16th     |
| century, for example, white skin | the ideal, and                       |
| many women put white makeup or   | their faces to be in style. Unfortu- |
| nately, the makeup               | made with the poisonous metals       |

| eventual<br>poison p  | mercury. Used over a long period of time, the makeup could ly remove layers of skin, cause teeth to fall out, and sometimes eople, leading to death. At other times in history, women willing to drink small amounts of the poison arsenic it made them look fashionably pale. |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|
| Decause   | it made them look fashionably pale.  |  |  |
| Sent  | ence Combining   |  |  |
| Read the exa  | emple and the model combinations below. Then rewrite sentences 1 and 2 e models.   |  |  |
| Example: Lying out in the sun is still a popular activity. People though they know it can cause cancer. |  |  |  |
| Models:   | a. Lying out in the sun is still a popular activity, even though people know it can cause cancer.  |  |  |
|   | b. Even though people know that lying out in the sun can cause cancer, it's still a popular activity.  |  |  |
|   | c. Despite the fact that lying out in the sun can cause cancer, it's still a popular activity.   |  |  |
| 0   | ching is popular in some parts of the world. People do it even hey know it can be dangerous.   |  |  |
| a<br>b  |  |  |  |
|   | women continue to wear high heels. They do it even though they can cause back problems.  |  |  |
| b   |  |  |  |
| C,  |  |  |  |

### **J** Writing

Think of something that is both fashionable and harmful in some way to your health. Describe the fashion, and explain why you think it is unhealthy.

### **Video Highlights**

### a Before You Watch

- 1. You are going to watch a video about a ban on smoking in public places. Such a ban would mean that people could not smoke in restaurants or bars.
  - a. What would be your reaction to the ban?
  - b. What do you think some of the arguments for and against the ban will be?
- 2. The words below are used in the video. Look up the words in a dictionary. How do you think these words will be used in the video? In pairs, discuss your ideas.

advocatesright (to do something)equivalentaddress (an issue)business boomedexposed (toaddictedadjustablesomething)

### **b** As You Watch

- 1. Watch the video and listen for the vocabulary words above. How are the words used?
- 2. Watch the video again. Match the quotes with the people who said them.

Restaurant patron #1 Chuck Hunt
Restaurant owner Bartender
Mayor Restaurant patron #2

- a. "You don't have a right to hurt others."
- b. "It's kind of unfair to punish people when you get 'em—you get people addicted to something."
- c. "A total ban is telling us we have to now be the smoking police and tell our customers that they can't do something in our restaurant."
- d. "It affected it [the business] in the beginning, but people seemed to be more adjustable after a period of time."



- e. "Most restaurants out here have outside patios, so people have a choice of sitting inside or outside."
- f. "I went to Florida, and they didn't have it there. And it was disgusting."

C After You Watch

www.iiLunguage.com

- 1. Read the statements. Circle *Agree* or *Disagree* to indicate your opinion about the statements.
  - a. The video presents only one side of the issue.

Agree

Disagree

b. All bartenders want the ban so that they won't have to inhale secondhand smoke.

Agree

Disagree

c. Restaurant owners are worried about how the ban will affect their business.

Agree

Disagree

d. Two states have already banned smoking, and businesses have not suffered.

Agree

Disagree

e. The restaurant patrons who were interviewed are in favor of the smoking ban.

Agree

Disagree

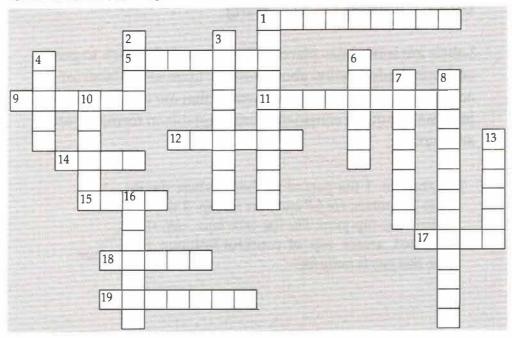
2. Form two teams to debate the topic "Should smoking be banned from restaurants and bars?" One team should represent a group of restaurant/bar owners. The other team should represent a group of antismoking advocates. First, write down your arguments in the chart below.

| Arguments against the ban | Arguments for the ban |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|
|                           |                       |
|                           |                       |
|                           |                       |
|                           |                       |
|                           |                       |
|                           |                       |
|                           |                       |

Then debate the issue with someone from the other team.

### **Activity Page**

#### **Crossword Puzzle**



| Δ             | CTOCC | 2 |
|---------------|-------|---|
| $\overline{}$ | CIUDI | 9 |

- 1. Farmers in many places have begun to \_\_\_\_\_ tobacco crops.
- 5. Something \_\_\_\_\_ is a mystery.
- 9. You can \_\_\_\_\_ tobacco by smoking cigarettes or through your nose with snuff.
- 11. too much
- 12. to hold on to something
- 14. Potato chips, French fries, cookies, and ice cream are \_\_\_\_ food.
- 15. Ask for extension 603 after you the number.
- 17. very light in color
- 18. poisonous
- 19. \_\_\_\_ can lead to a variety of health problems, such as type 2 diabetes.

#### Down

- 1. I live in a \_\_\_\_\_ neighborhood, close to the grocery store, laundromat, and subway.
- 2. Hunters may use food to \_\_\_\_\_ animals into traps.
- 3. makeup
- 4. To be awarded the Nobel Prize is a great \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. Many people wear contact lenses to correct poor \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6. Tongue \_\_\_\_ can cause infections and broken teeth.
- 7. Working on a computer all day can cause vision \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10. ridiculous
- 13. Until recently, infectious diseases and \_\_\_\_\_ were the biggest health concerns in most countries.
- 16. sucks up, like a sponge



245

### **Dictionary Page**

### **Understanding Labels: Slang**

Labels are sometimes placed after the part of speech to give additional information about a word. Look at the label for the adjective *hip*. Slang words are words that are commonly used informally but are considered unacceptable in formal speech and writing.

hip /hip/ n. 1 the part of the body where the leg joins the pelvis: He fell and hurt his hip. 2 the area around the hip joint: She has wide hips. -adj. slang informed, aware, esp. of youthful fashions: Hey, man, that guy is really hip!

1. Use your dictionary to find the definitions of the following words about fashion.

| Word             | Definition                                       |
|------------------|--|
| 1. hip (slang)   | informed, aware, especially of youthful fashions |
| 2. trendy        |  |
| 3. old-fashioned |  |
| 4. cool (slang)  |  |
| 5. bad (slang)   | V  |
| 6. frumpy        |  |

2. Look at the photos. With a partner, use the words above to describe the photos.





### Vocabulary

absorbs 213 absurd 235 abundance 134 abuse 66 accelerated 114 access 77 according to 38 account for 175 accurate 66 accused 235 achieving 88 acronym 76 adapt 4 address (v) 188 adept 115 adequate 77 all at once 215 altered 188 alternatives 176 although 25 altitudes 152 amateur 25 ancestors 4 announced 56 annual 175 applauded 87

approximately
123
arch 235
arrogance 39
artifacts 15
artificial 125
assigned 135
assistants 4
associate 226
assortment 164
astronomy 152
attempt 77
authority 87
awarded 66
awareness 88

b

ban 115 bandage 235 barren 103 barrier 114 basically 204 binding 235 biotechnology companies 188 bits 213 bizarre 164 blame 103 104 boasts 38 bolder boosted 188 brake 235

breeding 187 budget 76

C

calculate 153 calories 226 campaign 39 capacity 137 captivate 165 carved 37 cases 65 catastrophe 116 ceasefires 55 certain 215 charter 54 cheating 37 circulation 125 citizens 134 codes 153 colossal 124 combat 39 come across 215 commercially 125 committed 104 compiled 164 complications 205 components 27 comprehend 215

concerns 38 conferences 56 conscience 65 consequently 226 construction 175 consumer 175 contaminated 77 contributions 66 controversy 6 convenient 236 convinced 135 cooperation 88 cosmetics 125 crack 16 104 crime crisis 187 crowded 135 cultivate 204 135 curious 26 curves

d

data 153
- deciphering
153
declarations 37
declined 125
decorate 15

appointing 87

appropriately

approves 39

154

degraded 114 delegates 54 democratic 87 deny 175 deplete 177 deposition 136 depression 214 deprive 188 designated 39 despite 115 destructive 175 detect 153 deterioration 227 determine 226 devoted 176 dial 214 director 225 disabled 154 disasters 77 discord 124 discourage 104 discrimination 77 dispel 164 dispersal 176 distinctive 38 distractions 215 diverse 105 divert 114 donated 78 doom 164 dramatically 136 draws 105 drought 114 due to 114 durable 15

e

economic 55 ecosystems 135 effective 39 elected 55 emergency 76 emission 176 encompasses 87 encountered 204 engages 88 enhanced 188 enormous 123 entailed 87 entirely 16 eradication 76 eroded 114 ethics 88 ethnically 105 evaluating 55 evil 5 evolved 37 exalting 87 excessive 214 expanded 76 exploitation 88 exposing 26 exquisite 26 extensive 5 extraordinarily 26 extremes 123



facilities 55

factor 176 failure 204 fainted 236 fair 66 fantasy 175 fashionable 234 feasible 176 feat 123 figure out 213 finest 16 fired 15 flavorings 227 flesh 123 focus on 56 fond 165 food chain 124 foolhardy 104 for instance 26 forever 124 formation 165 formerly 104 forthcoming 87 fortunate 165 fraction 227 fragile 16 fundamental 165 further 165



gain 114 gang 38 general 165 genetically 187 genuine 37 get rid of 39 globally 77 gravity 152 grazing 103 guided 87



habitats 135
hardy 124
harsh 4
harvesting 125
haziest 136
headquarters
54
healing 4
honor 204
hosts 137



ideal 235 identify 26 ignorance 77 impact 188 impair 214 impartiality 66 imperative 5 impression 188 in action 26 in fact 15 in motion 154 in other words 226 in spite of 175 in style 234 in turn 124 incident 65

incredibly 17 indeed 235 indestructible 15 index 226 infectious 225 infertile 104 influx 105 inhaled 204 inhospitable 103 intermediary 88 invaluable 152 invertebrates 124 issues 56

j

jail 17 judges 87 junk 226

1

labels 205
ladder 25
landscape 4
leading 205
lifespan 153
life-threatening 227
link 124
livestock 115
lung 205
lure 227

113

m

magnificent 134 mainly 4 maintaining 55 makeup 235 malnutrition 77 management 115 massive 137 materials 15 meant 26 mental 215 merge 114 messengers 164 military 152 millennia 27 minimal 226 missionaries 105 missions 55 mobility 176 modified 188 monitor 152 moved (adj) 26 murdered 66

n

native 104 naturalists 135 navigation 152 negotiated 55 nerve 235 nevertheless 187 noticed 25 nutritious 188

0

obesity 225
occupying 205
off-limits 103
one-on-one 5
optimistic 187
orbits 152
original 6
origins 165
overweight 226
overwhelming
77

p

235 pale particles 164 particular 213 peak 176 pedestrians 176 penalty 66 peninsula 124 periodic 165 persist 76 pests 188 pesticides 137 philosophy 87 piercing 236 pondered 88 possession 15 post-op 205

potentially 152 poverty 188 prescription 188 presence 39 preserved 26 primarily 164 prison 65 procedure 235 profile 66 promised 6 properly 5 provide 226 publicity 66 puncture 236 punishments 17 purposes 16

r

ratio 5 recall 213 reclaim 115 recognize 87 recording 213 referees 87 refugees 116 registers 136 regular 226 release 65 reliability 66 remarks 65 repaired 154 repetition 214 representatives 54 require 5 resistant 17

lush

respected 6 respiratory 205 responsibility 55 restore 4 retain 213 retreated 136 retrieving 213 revolving 152 rites 203 role 55 rotation 153 rough 26 routine 76 203 rubbed

### S

scene 124 scratched 15 secluded 104 secondhand 205 sedentary 226 selective 187 semicircle 26 sensitive 137 sentenced (v) 65 serve 5 settlements 55 shading 26 sharp 76 shoreline 136 significantly 114

skyrocketing 226 soles 235 solidarity 87 solitude 125 sophisticated 26 specific 56 sponsor 39 sprawl 176 spread 16 staff 67 stand out stands for 76 state of mind 87 states (v) 54 static 113 stiff 26 strict 176 structure 15 styles 16 substantially 226 successes 55 suitable 186 surveys 77 suspected 104 sustaining 177 symbols 175



takes place 114 tapestries 5 target 104

taxing 204 teeming 124 territory 38 thus 214 tissue 152 torture 66 tourist 103 toxic 205 tracings 26 traits 188 transmitted 77 traumatized 78 treaty 124 trial 66 trial and error 27 troops 55

### u

ultra 235
undoing 135
unforgiving 4
uniformly 16
unimaginable
123
uninhabitable
103
urban 135
utopian 88



valuable 67 vandalism 39 variety 203
vast 25
vegetation 103
versatile 153
vision 214
visualization
techniques
215
vital 77
volatile 177
vulnerable 114



236 waist 234 weak well-being 4 whether 186 widely 186 widespread 205 wilderness 113 wind 16 withdrawal 55 within 165 witnesses 66 wounds 203 woven 6 wrapped 235



yields (n) 188

### Skills Index

#### **ACTIVITY PAGE**

Crossword puzzles, 48, 98, 146, 199, 245

#### **CHARTS**

Reading, 44, 109 Writing, 43, 59, 111, 132, 148, 158, 161, 180, 198, 220, 240, 244, 295 Taking notes in a chart, 10, 71, 240 Timelines, 109

#### **DICTIONARY PAGE**

Acronyms, 99 Choosing correct definition, 49–50 Prefixes, 200 Slang, 246–247 Word stress, 147

Antonyms, 58, 117, 156, 208

Articles, 11, 83, 130, 195

#### **GRAMMAR**

Compound nouns, 171 Multiple meanings, 21 Noun substitutes, 61, 110, 182, 222 Past participles as adjectives, 44–45 Prefixes, 71–72 mis-, 210 Prepositions, 22, 72, 120, 210-211 Suffixes, 109-110, 181 Synonyms, 29, 80, 127, 191, 217 Transition words, 142, 231–232 Verbs Active and passive, 160 Irregular, 33 Tenses, 94, 241–242 Word forms, 10–11, 32–33, 60–61, 82–83, 93, 129-130, 141, 159, 194, 221, 241

#### READING

Charts, 44, 109
Comprehension, 9, 19, 20, 30, 31, 42, 58–59, 69–70, 80–81, 91, 108, 118–119, 127–128, 139–140, 157, 168–169, 179–180, 191–193, 208–209, 218–219, 229–230, 238–239
Group activities, 47
Prereading activities, 2, 13, 24, 36, 52, 63, 74, 85, 102, 112, 122, 133, 150, 162, 173, 184, 202, 212, 224, 233
Strategies
Classifying, 180

Context clues, 128–129 Dictionary use, 82 Distinguishing fact and opinion, 20-21, 140, 209, 230-231 Identifying cause and effect, 119, 170, 220 Identifying details, 59, 158 Identifying main ideas, 43, 59, 158 Identifying supporting ideas, 295 Inference, 31, 92 Taking notes in a chart, 10, 71, 240 Timelines, 109 Vocabulary, 7-8, 18-19, 28-29, 40-41, 56-58, 67-69, 78-79, 89-90, 106-107, 116-117, 126–127, 137–138, 155–156, 166–167, 177–178, 189–190, 206–207, 216–217, 228-229, 237-238 Acronyms, 99 Antonyms, 58, 117, 156, 208 Collocations, 44, 120, 170–171, 231 Context clues, 3, 14, 25, 37, 53, 64, 75, 86, 103, 113, 123, 134, 151, 163, 174, 185, 203, 213, 225, 234 Definitions, 69, 107, 167, 229 Dictionary use, 82 Multiple meanings, 21 Odd one out, 41, 90, 138–139, 179, 238 Prefixes, 71–72 mis-, 210 Suffixes, 109-110, 181 Synonyms, 29, 80, 127, 191, 217 Word forms, 10–11, 32–33, 60–61, 82–83, 93, 129–130, 141, 159, 194, 221, 241

#### **SPEAKING**

Discussion, 97, 198, 211, 243 Group activities, 84, 97, 211, 244 Partner activities, 198, 243

#### **TEST-TAKING SKILLS**

Fill in blanks, 7–8, 10–11, 18–19, 22, 28–29, 32–33, 40–41, 44–45, 46–47, 49–50, 56–58, 60–61, 67–69, 71–72, 78–79, 82–83, 89–90, 93, 94, 106–107, 109–110, 116–117, 120, 126–127, 129–130, 137–138, 141, 142, 155–156, 159, 166–167, 177–178, 181, 189–190, 194, 195, 206–207, 210–211, 216–217, 221, 228–229, 231–232, 237–238, 241–242

Matching, 29, 58, 69, 80, 107, 117, 127, 144, 156, 167, 170, 171, 191, 197, 208, 217, 229, 231, 243 - 244

Multiple-choice questions, 21, 30, 31, 69–70, 80-81, 92, 118, 128-129, 139-140, 168-169, 191-192, 218-219

Odd one out, 41, 90, 138-139, 179, 238

True/false/not enough information questions, 9, 19, 42, 58–59, 91, 108, 127–128, 157, 179, 208, 219–220, 238–239

#### **TOPICS**

Art. 1-51

Cave paintings, 24–35 Ceramics, 13-23

Graffiti, 36-45

Navajo sand painting, 2–12

Health and well-being, 201-247

Fashions harmful to health, 233–242

Memory, 212–223 Obesity, 224–232

Smoking, 202-211

Organizations, 51–100

Amnesty International, 63-73

Olympic Games, 85–95

UNICEF, 74-84

United Nations, 52–62

Places, 101–148

Antarctica, 122-132

Deserts, 112-121

Hawaii, 102-111

National parks, 133–143

Science and technology, 149–200

Comets, 162–173

Motor vehicles, 173-183

New plants, 184-196 Satellites, 150–161

VIDEO HIGHLIGHTS, 46–47, 96–97, 144–145, 197-198, 243-244

#### **VIEWING**

Group activities, 47, 145 Paintings, 24 Photographs, 2, 36, 63, 233, 248 Videos, 46-47, 96-97, 144-145, 197-198, 243-244

#### **WRITING**

Advertisement, 211 Charts, 10, 43, 59, 100, 111, 132, 148, 158, 161, 180, 198, 220, 240, 244, 295 Timelines, 109

Description, 23, 84, 95, 111, 143, 172, 223, 242

Explanation, 23, 183, 232 Group activities, 97, 211

Ideas, 62

Information, 161

Journal entries, 35

Letters, 73

Lists, 97

Note taking, 10, 71, 96–97, 240

Opinion, 196

Paragraphs, 12, 45, 121

Partner activities, 12, 183

Sentence combining, 12, 22-23, 34-35, 45, 62, 73, 84, 95, 110–111, 121, 131–132, 142–143,

161, 172, 182–183, 196, 211, 222–223, 232,

242

Sentences, 9, 160

### **Reading & Vocabulary Development Series**

#### Facts & Figures

| International Student Edition   | 1-4130-0445-8 |
|---------------------------------|---------------|
| Audio CD                        | 1-4130-1332-5 |
| Audio Tape                      | 1-4130-1333-3 |
| CNN® Video for Books 1 & 2      |               |
| CNN® DVD for Books 1 & 2        | 1-4130-1587-5 |
| Answer Key and Video Transcript |               |
| for Books 1 & 2                 | 1-4130-0609-4 |
| Assessment CD-ROM with          |               |
| ExamView® Pro for Books 1 & 2   | 1-4130-0613-2 |

#### **Thoughts & Notions**

| International Student Edition   | 1-4130-0446-6 |
|---------------------------------|---------------|
| Audio CD                        | 1-4130-1334-1 |
| Audio Tape                      | 1-4130-1335-X |
| CNN® Video for Books 1 & 2      |               |
| CNN® DVD for Books 1 & 2        | 1-4130-1587-5 |
| Answer Key and Video Transcript |               |
| for Books 1 & 2                 | 1-4130-0609-4 |
| Assessment CD-ROM with          |               |
| ExamView® Pro for Books 1 & 2   | 1-4130-0613-2 |
|                                 |               |

#### **Cause & Effect**

| International Student Edition   | 1-4130-0447-4 |
|---------------------------------|---------------|
| Audio CDs                       | 1-4130-1330-9 |
| Audio Tapes                     | 1-4130-1331-7 |
| CNN® Video for Books 3 & 4      | 1-4130-0611-6 |
| CNN® DVD for Books 3 & 4        | 1-4130-1588-3 |
| Answer Key and Video Transcript |               |
| for Books 3 & 4                 | 1-4130-0612-4 |
| Assessment CD-ROM with          |               |
| ExamView® Pro for Books 3 & 4   | 1-4130-1327-9 |

#### Concepts & Comments NEW LEVEL!

| International Student Edition   | 1-4130-0448-2 |
|---------------------------------|---------------|
| Audio CDs                       | 1-4130-1328-7 |
| Audio Tapes                     | 1-4130-1329-5 |
| CNN® Video for Books 3 & 4      |               |
| CNN® DVD for Books 3 & 4        | 1-4130-1588-3 |
| Answer Key and Video Transcript |               |
| for Books 3 & 4                 | 1-4130-0612-4 |
| Assessment CD-ROM with          |               |
| EvamView® Pro for Rooks 3 8. 1  | 1-/130-1327-9 |

Reading & Vocabulary Development

### Concepts Comments

THIRD EDITION

#### Patricia Ackert | Linda Lee

The new edition of this popular series helps students develop reading skills and systematically increase their active vocabulary from 2,000 to 2,500 words.

- NEW LEVEL!
- PROVEN systematic pedagogy builds students' reading comprehension.
- NEW and UPDATED thematic readings (four per unit) recycle vocabulary, sentence structure, and content knowledge.
- UPDATED and carefully designed pre- and post-reading activities expand students' skills.
- UPDATED dictionary work builds students' vocabulary.
- NEW Assessment CD-ROM with ExamView® Pro allows instructors to quickly and easily create custom tests and quizzes.
- Audio components contain the readings.
- CNN® clips expand vocabulary and provide authentic input.
- Online activities! elt.thomson.com/readingandvocabulary

#### **Concepts & Comments**

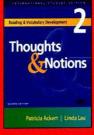
| Audio CDs  | 1-4130-1330-9 |
|--|---------------|
| Audio Tapes  | 1-4130-1331-7 |
| CNN® Video for Books 3 & 4                         | 1-4130-0611-6 |
| CNN® DVD for Books 3 & 4                           |               |
| Answer Key and Video Transcript for Books 3 & 4    |               |
| Assessment CD-ROM with ExamView® Pro for Books 3 & |               |

Thomson ELT, a part of the Thomson Company, is a leading

#### Discover the entire Reading & Vocabulary Development series



**Facts & Figures** 1-4130-0445-8



**Thoughts & Notions** 1-4130-0446-6



Cause & Effect 1-4130-0447-4



Concepts & Comments 1-4130-0448-2

International Student Edition

provider of materials for English Language teaching and learning throughout the world.

**THOMSON** 

Visit Thomson online at elt.thomson.com

1-4130-0448-2

For your lifelong learning needs: www.thomson.com/learning